

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01257897 7

LATIN COMPOSITION



# The University Tutorial Series.

CLASSICAL EDITOR: B. J. HAYES, M.A.

---

## LATIN COMPOSITION.

## Latin and Greek.

GRAMMARS AND READERS.

**The Tutorial Greek Course.** [In preparation.

**The Tutorial Greek Reader.** With VOCABULARIES. By A. WAUGH YOUNG, M.A. Lond., Gold Medallist in Classics, Assistant Examiner at the University of London. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

**Higher Greek Reader:** A Course of 132 Extracts from the best writers, in Three Parts, with an appendix containing the Greek Unseens set at B.A. Lond. 1877-1897. 3s. 6d.

**Latin Composition.** With copious EXERCISES. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Fifth Edition, revised.* 2s. 6d.

"This useful little book."—*Journal of Education.*

"Simplicity of statement and arrangement: apt examples illustrating each rule; exceptions to these adroitly stated just at the proper place and time, are among some of the striking characteristics of this excellent book."—*Schoolmaster.*

**The Tutorial Latin Dictionary.** By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A. Lond. and Camb., Gold Medallist in Classics, late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. 6s. 6d.

"A good specimen of elementary dictionary-making."—*Educational Times.*

"A sound school dictionary."—*Speaker.*

**The Preceptors' Latin Course.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.

"A good practical guide. The principles are sound, and the rules are clearly stated."—*Educational Times.*

**The Tutorial Latin Grammar.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Practical experience in teaching and thorough familiarity with details are plainly recognisable in this new Latin Grammar."—*Educational News.*

"It is accurate and full without being overloaded with detail, and varieties of type are used with such effect as to minimise the work of the learner. Tested in respect of any of the crucial points, it comes well out of the ordeal."—*Schoolmaster.*

**The Tutorial Latin Grammar, Exercises and Test Questions on.** By F. L. D. RICHARDSON, B.A. Lond., and A. E. W. HAZEL, LL.D., M.A., B.C.L. 1s. 6d.

"This will be found very useful by students preparing for University examinations."—*Westminster Review.*

**A Higher Latin Grammar.** [In the press.

**The Preceptors' Latin Reader.** By E. J. G. FORSE, M.A. 1s. 6d.

"A well graded and carefully thought-out series of Latin selections. The vocabulary is worthy of very high praise."—*Educational News.*

**The Tutorial Latin Reader.** With VOCABULARY. 2s. 6d.

"A soundly practical work."—*Guardian.*

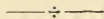
**Advanced Latin Unseens:** Being a Higher Latin Reader. Edited by H. J. MAIDMENT, M.A. Lond. and Oxon., and T. R. MILLS, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

"A work which will be found generally useful by students. The notes are valuable."—*Westminster Review.*

"Contains some good passages, which have been selected from a wider field than that previously explored by similar manuals."—*Cambridge Review.*



The University Tutorial Series.



# LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY

A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. OXON.,

EDITOR OF CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, HORACE'S ODES, VERGIL'S AENEID, ETC.,

AND

J. H. HAYDON, M.A. LOND. AND CAMB.,

LONDON UNIVERSITY EXHIBITIONER, SCHOLAR, AND GOLD MEDALLIST IN CLASSICS,  
HEADMASTER OF TETTENHALL COLLEGE, STAFFS.

*SIXTH IMPRESSION (FIFTH EDITION).*



LONDON: W. B. CLIVE,  
**University Tutorial Press**  
(University Correspondence College Press),  
157 DRURY LANE, W.C.

295324  
—  
12. 1. 34

PA  
2087  
A45  
1920

# CONTENTS.

---

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE AND THE SIMPLE AND COM- POUND CONCORDS (§§ 1-23) .....	1
II. THE OBJECT (§§ 24-55) .....	10
III. VERBS: PASSIVE, DEONENT, AND IMPERSONAL (§§ 56-79) .....	20
IV. PARTICIPLES AND VERBAL NOUNS (§§ 80-109).....	27
V. RELATIONS OF AGENT AND INSTRUMENT; PLACE, SPACE AND TIME, PRICE AND VALUE, COMPARISON, QUALITY, AND MATERIAL (§§ 110-134) .....	39
VI. VARIOUS RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY CASES: ACCUSA- TIVE, GENITIVE, DATIVE, ABLATIVE (§§ 135-150) ....	48
VII. PREPOSITIONS (§ 151) .....	55
VIII. PRONOUNS AND COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES (§§ 152-180) .....	56
IX. NUMERALS; THE CALENDAR; MONEY (§§ 181-193).....	67
X. THE INDICATIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES (§§ 194-205)..	73
XI. THE PURE SUBJUNCTIVE (§§ 206-211) .....	78
XII. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES AND THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES (§§ 212-215) .....	81
XIII. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS (§§ 216-220) .....	84
XIV. QUESTIONS DIRECT AND INDIRECT (§§ 221-331) .....	86

	PAGE
XV. SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES (§§ 232-247).....	91
XVI. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (§§ 248-259) .....	97
XVII. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES: CONCESSIVE, COMPARATIVE, CAUSAL, FINAL, CONSECUTIVE, AND TEMPORAL (§§ 260-294) .....	103
XVIII. EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES (§§ 295-296) .....	117
XIX. CONJUNCTIVES, DISJUNCTIVES AND NEGATIVES (§§ 297- 301).....	118
XX. DEPENDENT STATEMENTS; SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUB- DEPENDENT CLAUSES (§§ 302-315) .....	120
SYNOPTIC VIEW OF CONJUNCTIONS FOLLOWED BY THE INDICA- TIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES (§ 316) .....	124
APPENDIX I. ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES IN A LATIN PROSE SENTENCE (§§ 317-328) ....	127
II. ON THE RENDERING OF ENGLISH ABSTRACT EXPRESSIONS (§§ 329, 330).....	131
EXERCISES .....	133
VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES .....	169
INDEX .....	184

## PREFACE.

---

THIS book, together with the *Exercises*, is intended to serve as a guide to the writing of Latin, up to the point at which the student enters upon the composition of continuous prose. It includes, however, notices of some few constructions which are admissible only in poetry, but in such a way as to warn the learner against their use. Moreover, these additions will serve to make the book useful as an Elementary Syntax of reference.

The arrangement and method of the book follow, in the main, those in vogue for the teaching of English Grammar, and it is hoped that some small step will have been made towards smoothing the beginner's path if he realises that the same principles underlie the syntax of both languages, and that the parallelism often extends to details. Lack of space prevents the analogy being worked out in full, but there is, we trust, no statement or omission which is inconsistent with the theory.

Candidates for examinations not above the standard of London University Matriculation may safely lighten the task of preparation by omitting the paragraphs marked by an asterisk (\*). They will do well also to confine

themselves to the divisions of the Exercises marked (A) and (B), or even to work carefully through (A) only, rather than hurry through a larger portion of the sentences.

For the use of teachers and private students a Key has been drawn up, and the latter class of readers should correct their own work by the Key (which gives for the most part the original Latin from which the English sentences were translated), and after studying the Latin carefully, and observing the nature of their own mistakes, should attempt the Exercise a second time, and again correct it, if necessary, by the Key. In many places alternative versions have been given, in order to relieve, as far as possible, the doubts of private students whose versions of the English, though correct in themselves, are not identical with the original Latin.

---

## PREFACE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

For this edition the type of the book-work has been reset, and considerable changes have been made both in the wording of rules and the selection of examples; the numbering of the sections, however, remains unaltered throughout.

# LATIN COMPOSITION.

---

## CHAPTER I.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE AND THE SIMPLE AND COMPOUND CONCORDS.

1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences and the due arrangement of words and clauses.

2. Every grammatical sentence is either—

- (i.) A Statement (Enunciation),
- (ii.) A Question (Interrogation),
- (iii.) A Command or Prayer,
- (iv.) An Exclamation.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

3. In every grammatical sentence there must be (1) a subject, about which something is predicated; and (2) a predicate, which is that which is affirmed or denied of the subject.

NOTE 1.—The personal inflexions of the Latin verb render it needless in many cases, particularly in the 1st or 2nd person, to express the subject separately. E.g., *I love* = *āmō*; *Thou advisest* = *mōnēs*. This also occurs frequently with verbs in the 3rd person plural; e.g., *Men say* = *fērunt*.

NOTE 2.—When the pronominal subject of a verb is expressed, it is for the sake of emphasis. E.g., *It is I that love* = *ēgō āmō*; *It is thou that dost advise* = *tū mōnēs*.

4. The subject of a sentence must be a substantive or the equivalent of a substantive, and may consist of any number of words provided the idea they express is equivalent to a substantive. *E.g.*, in the sentence "The man who founded the city of Rome perished," the subject of "perished" is the whole expression "The man who founded the city of Rome."

5. Hence the subject of a Latin sentence may be—

(i.) A substantive ; as

*The dog barks,*  
cānis lātrāt.

(ii.) An adjective used as a substantive ; as,

*Good men agree,*  
bōnī consentiunt.

(iii.) A pronoun ; as,

<i>I speak,</i>	<i>She said,</i>
ēgō loquor.	ēā dixit.

(iv.) An infinitive used as a substantive ; as,

*To err is human,*  
errāre est hūmānum.

(v.) A clause equivalent to a substantive ; as,

*He who founded the city of Rome has perished,*  
quī urbem Rōmam condidit, intēriit.

And the object (§§ 24, *sqq.*) may take exactly the same forms.

6. The predicate of a sentence must be a finite verb (but see § 103), or some finite part of the substantive verb (sum, esse) with the addition of a complementary word or words. *E.g.*,

*Spring comes, or Spring is coming,*  
vēr vēnit.

*Great is Rome,*  
magnā est Rōmā.



NOTE 1.—When the predicate consists of some part of the substantive verb and some complementary word or words, the substantive verb is called the **copula**, and the remainder of the predicate is called the **complement**. *E.g.*, in the last example, **Rōmă** is the subject, **est** is the copula, **magnă** is the complement.

NOTE 2.—The complement is so called because it *completes* the predicate.

NOTE 3.—**Sum**, **essē**, etc., may stand without a complement in the sense of *to exist*. *E.g.*, *There is such a thing as virtue*, or *Virtue does exist*, **est virtūs**; *Troy has existed*, **Trōiă fŭit**.

7. The complement is usually a substantive, participle, or adjective in the same case as the subject. *E.g.*,

*Cicero was consul*,  
**Cicērō ērăt consŭl**.

*The Greeks were very eloquent*,  
**Graecī ēlōquentissimī ērant**.

NOTE.—But the complement may also be a substantive in the dative (see § 144), or a substantive in the genitive or ablative case qualified by an attributive adjective (see § 142 and NOTE).

8. **Est**, **sunt**, are frequently omitted, especially with a past participle passive. *E.g.*,

*Art is long, life is short*,  
**ars longă, vītă brēvis**.

*The enemy were routed*,  
**fŭsī hostēs**.

\*NOTE.—The omission of the copula with a subject in the 1st or 2nd person is rare. *E.g.*, *I am he*, **illē ēgō**; *Thou art his wife*, **tū coniunx**.

9. One substantive appended to another as an enlargement or description is said to be in **apposition** with it, and stands in the same case as that with which it is in apposition. *E.g.*,

*Hanno withstood Hannibal, the general of the Carthaginians*,  
**Hannibālī, Poenōrum dŭcī, rēsistēbăt Hannō**.

NOTE 1.—This is especially the idiom with proper names of places, towns, islands, etc., which are in English connected with their respective common substantives by the preposition *of*. *E.g.*, *The city of Rome*, **urbs Rōmă**; *The town of Corioli*, **oppīdum Cōriōlī**.

NOTE 2.—Apposition affects *case only*: thus, above, **Cōrīōlī** (nominative plural masculine) is in apposition with **oppidum** (nominative singular neuter).

\* NOTE 3.—In such phrases as “Such a man as your father,” the Latin employs **vīr**, with a suitable epithet, in apposition with the word *father*. E.g., *I admire such a man as your father* (i.e., so good a man) = **pātrēm tūm, vīrum optimum, admirōr**. Similarly, *So great a crime as this* = **hōc tantum faciūns**. But if an actual comparison is intended, **tālīs—quālīs, hūiusmōdī, ēiusmōdī, sīmīlīs**, etc., must be used: *Who could agree to obey a master such as Caesar?* **quis dōmīnō (tālī), quālīs est Caesār, pārērē vēlīt?** *We want many such as your brother,* **frātrīs tūi sīmīlēs multōs dēsīdērāmūs**.

NOTE 4.—In a few expressions of place and quantity the English “of” is part of the meaning of the Latin adjective, and does not affect the case of the substantive which follows. E.g., *The top of the mountain,* **summūs mons**; *In the middle of the river,* **īn mēdiō flūmīnē**; *At the bottom of the valley,* **ād īmam vallem**. Such adjectives are: **ultīmūs, sūprēmūs** (**summūs**), **tōtūs, dīmīdiūs, multūs, plērīquē, plūrīmūs, paucūs, minimūs, nōvissīmūs** (= *last*), **cunctūs, infīmūs** (**īmūs**), **primūs, mēdiūs, rēliquūs**.

10. Sentences may be enlarged (i.) by the addition of words or clauses qualifying or extending the subject or predicate; (ii.) by the use of more than one subject with the same predicate; (iii.) by the use of more than one predicate with the same subject; (iv.) by a plurality of subjects and predicates alike.

### THE SIMPLE CONCORDS.

11. CONCORD I. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, and the verb agrees therewith in number and in person.

NOTE 1.—For the subject of the infinitive, see §§ 103, 104.

\* NOTE 2.—Collective substantives such as **pars, sēnātūs, exercītūs**, etc., as a rule take the verb in the singular; but are often found with a plural verb when the idea of *a number of individuals* is prominent. E.g., *A large proportion preferred freedom,* **magnā pars libertātem antefērēbāt**; *Some of them are loading the tables,* **pars ōnērānt mensās**.

NOTE 3.—If the subject of the verb is a relative, the verb takes the person of the antecedent (expressed or understood) to which the relative refers. E.g., *I who am here*, *ĕgŏ quī adsum*; *Ye who have come*, *vŏs quī vĕnistis*.

12. CONCORD II. The adjective, participle, or adjectival pronoun agrees in gender, number, and case with that to which it refers either as predicate or attribute.

NOTE 1.—Any case of an adjective or participle or pronominal adjective may be used as a substantive, referring to “men” or “things” (understood), according as it is masculine, or neuter. In the case of ordinary adjectives this usage, though common in the neuter singular and plural, is otherwise chiefly confined to the masculine plural of a few words such as *māli*, *bŏnī*, *multī*. The nominative of the present participle is seldom used as a substantive; thus “men who agree” will usually be *quī consentiunt*, not *consentiētēs*. The usage is commonest in the case of pronominal adjectives (*hic*, *istĕ*, *illĕ*, etc.).

*Obs.*—The beginner when in doubt whether to use an adjective substantivally or not should refrain from doing so, and should add some such word as *vīr*, *hŏmō*, *rĕs*. The general principal is that ambiguity must be avoided.

\*NOTE 2.—When one adjective is *attributed* (see § 13, NOTE 2) to several substantives, it will agree with the nearest of such substantives. E.g., *A matter of much trouble and toil*, *rĕs multae ōpĕrae āc lābŏrīs*.

For the gender of an adjective used as a common *predicate* to several substantives, see § 23.

13. Hence the substantive verb (*essĕ*) requires its complement to be in the same case as its subject. *E.g.*,

*I am he*,  
*illĕ ĕgŏ sum*.

*I believe this to be true*,  
*hŏc vĕrum essĕ crĕdŏ*.

*Themistocles had a right to be at leisure*,  
*līcŭit Thĕmistŏclī essĕ ōtīŏsŏ*.

NOTE 1.—Except in the cases referred to in § 7, NOTE.

NOTE 2.—Adjectives, substantives, etc., thus used as complements are said to be *predicative*; but an adjective or participle joined to a substantive merely as a qualifying epithet is called *attributive*.

14. The same rule applies to many intransitive verbs (see § 24), and to others used passively, when coupled with a substantive or adjective descriptive of the subject. These are called **copulative verbs**. Such are—

(i) Verbs signifying *to become, be made, be appointed, be named*, etc.; e.g., *fiō, nascōr, crēōr, nōmīnōr, dicōr*.

*Cicero was appointed consul, Cīcērō consūl crēātūs est.*

(ii) Verbs signifying *to be considered, thought*, etc.; e.g., *existīmōr, pūtōr*; and, in this sense, *dūcōr, hābēōr*.

*He is accounted a good man, vīr bōnūs hābētūr.*

*This was considered the worst crime, hōc pessīmum dūcēbātūr faciūs.*

(iii.) *Vīdēōr*.

*Ye seem (to be) at variance, discordēs vīdēmīnī.*

NOTE 1.—Such a sentence as *It seems that you are happy* becomes in Latin *fēlix vīdēris* or *fēlix essē vīdēris*, *You seem (to be) happy*. So, *It is said that Caesar is here* = *Caesār dicītūr ādessē*. (See also § 104, NOTE 2.)

\*NOTE 2.—Occasionally when there are two complements that which is logically the first agrees with the second rather than with the subject. E.g., *Not every mistake ought to be called folly*, *nōn omnis errōr stultitiā est dicendā* (instead of *dicendūs*).

15. CONCORD III. The relative pronouns and adjectives (*quī, quantūs, quālīs*, and their compounds) agree with that to which they refer in gender and in number, but their case is determined by the clause to which they belong. *E.g.*,

*The man whom you see is a king,*  
*vīr quem vīdēs rex est.*

*You will be sorry for your deeds, of whatever sort they are,*  
*fāciñōrum, quāliācumquē sunt, tē poenitēbit.*

*I deeply love him to whom I was speaking,*  
*ēum quōcum lōquēbār vēhēmētēr āmō.*

NOTE 1.—That to which a relative refers is called its *antecedent*; e.g., in the last example, the antecedent of *quō* is *ēum*.

NOTE 2.—When a substantive stands to the relative pronoun in the relation of predicate, the relative generally assumes the gender and number of that substantive. E.g., *Thebes itself, which city is the capital of Boeotia, was taken*, *captae sunt Thēbae ipsae, quōd Boeōtiāe cāpūt est* (instead of *quae . . . sunt*).

16. Like other relatives, *quī* has its special demonstrative correlative (see § 165), the distinctive pronoun *is, eā, id*; though this is not always expressed. E.g., *This is the affair which I am managing* may be either *haec est rēs quam agō*, or *haec eā rēs est quam agō*.

NOTE.—For *quī*, etc., with the subjunctive, following the correlative *is*, etc., see § 161, NOTE, and § 284.

\*17. The antecedent is often attracted into the relative clause, and then it agrees with the relative in case as well as in gender and number. E.g.,

*The place where the Eneidi and Trojans first landed is called Troy,*  
*in quem primum Ēnētī Trōiāniquē ēgressī sunt lōcum, Trōiā*  
*vōcātūr.*

\*NOTE 1.—If the antecedent consists partly or wholly of an appositive substantive (§ 9), the latter is usually thus attracted. E.g., *Roscius the actor, whom you remember, Rosciūs, quem mīmum rēcor-dārīs*; *He paid my debt, a kindness that I shall never forget, quōd dēbūi persolvīt, cuiūs bēnēficiū numquam obliviscār.*

NOTE 2.—The same applies to an adjective, especially if in the superlative degree, qualifying the antecedent. E.g., *There remains the fairest reward which I possess, praeimium, quōd pulcherrimum hābēō, restāt.*

\*18. If the antecedent be a collective substantive, the relative will often agree with the implied rather than the grammatical antecedent. E.g.,

*A great part, who voted . . . ,*  
*magnā pars, quī censēbant . . .*  
*(instead of quae censēbāt).*

\*19. As *mēūs = of me*, *tūūs = of thee*, *nostēr = of us*, *vestēr = of you*, the relative *quī* regularly agrees with the antecedent implied in those possessive adjectives. E.g.,

*I hear the words of you who are speaking,*  
*vestrā quī lōquimīnī verbā audīō.*

20. Where, in English, a sentence begins with a conjunction (*and*, *but*, etc.) and a demonstrative, the Latin idiom commonly omits the conjunction, and puts the corresponding relative in place of the demonstrative. *E.g.*,

*And he came,*  
*quī vēnīt.*

*And they were listening to them,*  
*quōs audīebant.*

*And those who heard this thing,*  
*quam rem quī audīebant.*

NOTE 1.—The proper position of the relative is at the beginning of its clause. The preposition, however, precedes the relative, unless the latter has an attracted antecedent in agreement with it; in which case the preposition may either precede or follow the relative.

NOTE 2.—*Cum* may either precede the relative *quī* or be appended to it as an enclitic (*i.e.*, be joined on to it and pronounced as a part of the same word); whereas with personal pronouns *cum* is always enclitic. *E.g.*, *quōcum*, *quibuscum*, or *cum quō*, *cum quībūs*; but always *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nōbiscum*, *vōbiscum*.

NOTE 3.—The relative is often omitted in English, but never in Latin. *E.g.*, *The man you saw returned*, *is quem vidistī rēdīit*.

## THE COMPOUND CONCORDS.

21. EXTENSION OF SIMPLE CONCORD I. When the same verb belongs to two or more subjects connected by “and” it is in the plural number. *E.g.*,

*Already had Pansa and Hirtius fallen,*  
*iam Pansā et Hirtīus occidērant.*

NOTE 1.—But the predicate remains in the singular number when the subjects are disconnected by disjunctive particles. *E.g.*, *Not Pansa, but Hirtius, has now fallen*, *nōn Pansā sed Hirtīus iam occidit*.

\*NOTE 2.—*Quisquē* (*each*) is regularly used with a plural verb, being in reality parenthetic, or appositive to another word expressed or implied, which word is the actual subject of the predicate. *E.g.*, *Men love each his own relatives*, *amant suōs quisquē nēcessariōs* (real subject implied, *hōmīnēs*).

\*NOTE 3.—The formula *Sēnātūs Pōpulusquē Rōmānūs* (abbreviated S.P.Q.R.) invariably takes a singular verb; and so whenever the various subjects are regarded as one idea or two ways of expressing the same idea. *E.g.*, *Let religion and good faith be preferred to friendship*, *rēligiō et fidēs antēpōnātūr amicitīae*.

22. When the subjects are of different persons, the verb is in the plural number, in accordance with § 21, but agrees with the prior person; the first being reckoned prior to the second, the second to the third person. *E.g.*,

*Both you and I know this,*      *You and Tullia are well,*  
 ēt ěgō ēt tū hōc scīmūs.      tū ēt Tulliā vālētis (*not vālent*).

NOTE 1.—If, however, the verb is placed immediately before or after the prior subject, it will obey the ordinary rule (§ 11). *E.g.*, *Both I know this, and you do also,* ēt ěgō hōc scīō ēt tū.

NOTE 2.—And if the subjects be disjoined by disjunctive particles, the verb will obey the ordinary rule (§ 21, NOTE 2) whatever its position. *E.g.*, *He does not believe it, neither do I,* nēc ěgō crēdō nēc illē, or nēc ěgō nēc illē crēdīt.

*Obs.*—If one of the subjects be of the first person it will in Latin stand first, not last as in the English idiom.

\*23. EXTENSION OF SIMPLE CONCORD II. **Predicative adjectives** and participles which belong to two or more subjects are in the plural number. When the genders vary, the predicate is masculine if the subjects be animate but neuter if the subjects be inanimate. When the subject is partly animate and partly inanimate, the predicate is indifferent in gender. *E.g.*,

*Then his wife and children embraced him,*  
 uxōr dēindē āc libērī ēum amplexī sunt.

*Rank and glory are to be sought, hatred and envy are to be avoided,*  
 hōnōs ēt glōriā appētendā sunt, ōdium ēt invīdiā fūgīendā.

*The king and the king's fleet set out together,*  
 rex rēgiāquē classīs ūnā prōfectī.

*The king and his kingdom will be safe,*  
 rex regnumquē salvā ērunt.

*Obs.*—When the subject is partly animate, partly inanimate, the use of a neuter predicate implies that the various members of the subject are viewed rather as *things* than as *persons*. Conversely, when the predicate is masculine or feminine, it is the *person* rather than the *thing* which is prominent.



## CHAPTER II.—THE OBJECT.

**24. A transitive verb** is one whose action is necessarily *performed upon* an object. An **intransitive verb** is one whose action may be considered complete in itself, though it often indirectly *affects* an object. *E.g.*,

*Govern your mind, for unless it is obedient (to you) it is ruler (over you).*

*ānimum rēgē, quī nīsi pārēt (tībi) impērāt (tībi).*

*Obs.*—The beginner must beware of supposing that the Latin verb used to translate an English transitive verb is necessarily transitive. *E.g.*, *I obey* is commonly rendered by *pārēō*, which is an intransitive verb, meaning *I am obedient*. The more common English transitive verbs which are ordinarily rendered by Latin intransitive verbs are given in §§ 42-48.

**25.** The action of a transitive verb, performed on one object, often affects another object. In these cases the object more immediately necessary to the action of the verb is called the **direct object**; that which is less necessary is called the **indirect object**. *E.g.*,

*I give you a book,*

*dō tībi (indirect object) librum (direct object).*

*NOTE.*—In this example *dō librum* would be in itself a complete sentence; but *dō tībi* is incomplete without the addition of a word expressing that which is given, *i.e.*, the direct object.

**26. Intransitive verbs**, on the other hand, by their nature admit of **no direct object**; but almost all admit an indirect object expressing the person or thing indirectly affected. *E.g.*,

*I am envious,*  
*invidēō.*

*I am envious of you,*  
*invidēō tībi.*

*NOTE 1.*—This indirect object is usually in the dative case.

*NOTE 2.*—Many verbs are sometimes intransitive, sometimes transitive. *E.g.*, *I am a fugitive, I run away, fūgiō*; *I am running away from my country, fūgiō patriam.*



27. When a **transitive verb** is used in the **passive**, that which was the direct object in the active construction becomes the subject of the passive verb. The indirect object remains unchanged. *E.g.*,

*I give you a book,*  
dō tibi librum.

*A book is given to you,*  
dātūr tibi libēr.

NOTE.—For the passive voice of intransitive verbs, see § 60.

28. The **object** may be either a **substantive**, or its equivalent (whether pronoun, adjective, participle, infinitive, or clause; see § 5), in any case except the nominative or vocative. [For examples, see the following sections.]

NOTE.—An infinitive or a clause is admissible as an object only when the substantive for which it thus stands as an equivalent would be in the accusative case.

29. But as the larger number of transitive verbs take an accusative of the direct, a dative of the indirect object, it is usually said that—

(i.) The **accusative** is the case of the direct object.

(ii.) The **dative** is the case of the indirect object.

### THE ACCUSATIVE AS OBJECT.

The **accusative** is found—

30. (i.) With all **transitive verbs** as the direct object.

*E.g.*,

*Our soldiers withstood the enemy's charge,*  
nostrī milītēs impētum hostiū sustinuerunt.

31. (ii.) With many apparently **intransitive verbs** used **transitively**. *E.g.*,

*We are fleeing from our country,*  
nōs patriam fugimūs.

*Jupiter and Venus laughed at Acrisius,*  
Acrisiūm risērunt Iuppitēr ēt Vēnūs.

32. (iii.) With certain compound verbs of motion; *e.g.*, *ădîrĕ*, *înrĕ*, *ôbîrĕ*, *sŭbîrĕ*, and compounds of intransitive verbs with *circum*, *pĕr*, *praetĕr*, *trans*, and *subtĕr*, as *circumstărĕ*, *transîrĕ*.

\*NOTE.—Hence *ădîrĕ*, *înrĕ*, *transîrĕ*, *circŭmirĕ* are freely used in the passive. *E.g.*, *This design is being entered upon*, *hŏc consilium înitŭr*.

33. (iv.) It is joined as a cognate accusative, or accusative of kindred meaning, to many purely intransitive verbs. *E.g.*,

*I have lived my life,*  
*vĭtam vixī.*

*To serve a slavery,*  
*servĭrĕ servitŭtem.*

\*NOTE.—The cognate accusative is found particularly with verbs expressing *to smell of* or *to taste of*. *E.g.*, *To smell of wine*, *vĭnum rĕdŏlĕrĕ*.

34. (v.) With a large class of verbs expressing *to make*, *name*, *choose*, *appoint*, *elect*, *consider*, *think*, *prove*, etc., two accusatives are found, one of the object, the other predicative. These are called **factitive verbs**. Such are—

*Call*, *appellŏ.*

*Make*, *făcĭŏ.*

*Create*, *crĕŏ.*

*Consider*, *account*, *hăbĕŏ.*

*Call*, *dĭcŏ.*

*Name*, *nŏmĭnŏ.*

*Consider*, *dŭcŏ.*

*Make*, *reddŏ.*

*Estimate*, *consider*, *existĭmŏ.*

NOTE.—When these verbs are used in the passive voice, they become copulative verbs (see § 14, i. and ii.).

Examples.—*We make thee, Fortune, a goddess*, *tĕ făcĭmŭs, Fortună, dĕam*; *Fortune is made a goddess*, *Fortună fĭt dĕă*; *This man they deemed a philosopher*, *hunc pŭtăbant philŏsŏphum*; *This man was deemed a philosopher*, *hic philŏsŏphŭs pŭtăbătŭr*.

35. (vi.) Two accusatives may also be used with verbs of reminding, teaching, and asking. *E.g.*,

*They are asking you your opinion,*  
*tĕ rŏgant sententiam.*

*I am teaching you virtue,*  
*vŏs dŏcĕŏ virtŭtem.*

NOTE 1.—When such verbs are used in the passive, the accusative denoting the *person* becomes the nominative, the other accusative remaining unchanged. E.g., *You are being asked for your opinion, tū sententiā rōgārīs.* But instead of *dōcēōr*, *discō* is used.

NOTE 2.—A similar construction is used with *trāmittō*, *trādūcō*, *trāiciō* (*to send, lead, throw across*), etc. E.g., *He put his soldiers across the river, milītēs flūmēn trāiecit; The soldiers were taken across the river, milītēs flūmēn trāiecti sunt.*

NOTE 3.—*Cēlō* (*to hide*) also takes two accusatives, one of the thing hidden, the other of the person from whom it is hidden. E.g., *My son hid this from me, haec mē cēlāvīt filiūs.* In the passive construction the person becomes the subject, and the thing is expressed by *dē* and the ablative or (in the case of a neuter pronoun) by the accusative. E.g., *This was concealed from you, tū dē hāc rē cēlātūs ēs, or tū hōc cēlātūs ēs.*

\*NOTE 4.—Most verbs of asking may be constructed with the *person* in the ablative with *ā* or *āb*. E.g., *This they ask of you, hōc ā tē rōgant.*

\*NOTE 5.—*Admōnēō* (*to warn*), *commōnēfāciō* (*to remind*), may take an accusative of the *person* and a genitive of the *thing*. E.g., *He warned his brothers of their guilt, admōnūt frātrēs culpaē.*

36. For the accusative with impersonal verbs, see § 69.

### GENITIVE AS OBJECT.

37. (i.) With most verbs of remembering and forgetting, pitying and regretting, the object is in the genitive. *E.g.,*

*I remember that man well,*  
*illiūs hōmīnīs bēnē mēmīnī.*

*Take pity on the father,*  
*pātrīs mīserērē.*

NOTE 1.—*Mīserēōr* always take the genitive; but *mīserōr* always the accusative.

\*NOTE 2.—Most verbs of remembering and forgetting admit the accusative as well as the genitive. *Rēcordōr* nearly always takes the accusative.

NOTE 3.—Verbs of pitying and regretting are chiefly the five impersonal verbs, *mīserēt*, *pīgēt*, *paenītēt*, *pūdēt*, *taedēt*, for which see further, § 69.

38. (ii.) Verbs of **accusing** and **condemning** take an **accusative** of the **person**, a **genitive** of the **charge**, **crime**, or **penalty**. *E.g.*,

*He was accusing Catilina of conspiracy,*  
Cătîlinam coniūratiōnis argŭebăt.

*He condemned the accused to exile,*  
rēos exsilii condemnāvīt.

NOTE 1.—To condemn to death is cāpītis damnārē, cāpūt being synonymous with *existence*, especially *existence as a citizen*. Hence *A fault which is punishable with death, a capital crime* = cāpītālīs culpă.

\*NOTE 2.—The penalty is sometimes put in the **ablative case** (abl. of price; see § 127); e.g., *To assess a man's penalty at death*, ālīquem mortē multārē. The matter of accusation may be expressed by the **ablative** with **dē**; e.g., *He was charged with assault*, dē vī accūsātus est.

39. (iii.) Ēgēō, indīgēō, *to be in want of*, complēō, implēō, *to fill*, may govern a **genitive**. *E.g.*,

*I want your advice,*  
indīgēō tui consilii.

*The dungeon was now full of merchants,*  
complētus iam mercatōrum carcer erat.

40. (iv.) A similar **genitive** of the **object** (**objective genitive**) follows **substantives** and **adjectives** of a **transitive import**; *i.e.*, such as would, if turned into the corresponding verbs, require a **direct object** (*e.g.*, āmōr patriae—āmārē patriam). Hence it is used with most **adjectives** and **substantives** of a meaning akin to that of the verbs above mentioned (§§ 37, 38, 39). Such are—

- (a) **Substantives** expressing **action** and **feeling** (desire, love, hate, regard, regret, pity, memory, knowledge, envy, need, participation, power, etc.);
- (b) The **corresponding adjectives**, including all present participles used as adjectives;
- (c) **Substantives** and **adjectives** expressing **likeness** or **unlikeness**.

NOTE 1.—It is necessary to distinguish carefully between, *e.g.*, **pătîens** (adjective) **lăbōris**, *capable of enduring toil*, and **pătîens** (participle) **lăbōrem**, (*actually*) *enduring toil*.

NOTE 2.—**Sîmilîs** and **dissîmilîs** are used with genitive or dative indifferently, except that a person is more commonly in the genitive.

NOTE 3.—For the genitive with **intērest** and **rēfert**, see §§ 73, 74.

### DATIVE AS OBJECT.

**41.** The **dative** stands invariably as **indirect**, never as **direct object**; and is joined alike to transitive and intransitive verbs, whether active or passive.

*Obs.*—The indirect object, being that person or thing to which the action of the verb extends not necessarily but incidentally, usually takes the sign “to” or “for” in English, but in many instances has no sign at all. *E.g.*, *I bid you go*, **impērō tîbi ūt ēās**; *They gave them books*, **îis librōs dēdērunt**.

NOTE.—The dative must never be used in prose to express *motion to*. *E.g.*, *I send you a letter (i.e., for you)*, **tîbi littērās mittō**; *I am sending a letter to you*, **ād tē littērās mittō**.

**42. (i.)** A dative of the **indirect object** is used with many verbs signifying *to please, displease; gratify; assist; give to, take away from; believe in, entrust to; favour, pardon, spare; envy; yield to; heal, hurt; agree with; be angry with*, etc. Such are—

*Take away from*, **ădîmō**.

*Concede*, **annŭō**.

*Agree with*, **assentîŭr**.

*Take away from*, **aufērō**.

*Yield to*, **cēdō**.

*Put in the charge of*, **committō**.

*Trust to*, **confidō**.

*Entrust to*, **crēdō**.

*Displease*, **displîcēō**.

*Give to*, **dō**.

*Present to*, **dōnō**.

*Favour*, **făvēō**.

*Trust in*, **fidō**.

*Gratify*, **grătîficōr**.

*Congratulate*, **grătŭlŭr**.

*Pardon*, **ignoscō**.

*Indulge*, **indulgēō**.

*Envy*, **invîdēō**.

*Be angry with*, **îrascōr**.

*Heal*, **mēdēōr**.

*Gratify*, **humour**, **mŭrîgērŭr**.

*Harm*, **nŭcēō**.

*Offer to*, **offērō**.

*Spare*, **parcō**.

*Please*, **plăcēō**.

*Satisfy*, **sătîsfăcîō**.

*Be angry with*, **succensēō**.

NOTE 1.—*Iūvō*, *adiūvō* (*help*), *laedō* (*hurt*), *dēlectō*, *oblectō* (*please*), *sānō* (*heal*), being transitive verbs, take the accusative.

NOTE 2.—*Dōnō* admits of two constructions. E.g., *I present you with a book*, *dōnō tē* (acc.) *lībrō* (abl.); *I present a book to you*, *dōnō tibi lībrum*.

\* NOTE 3.—*Grātūlōr* takes a dative of the person; that which is the matter of congratulation is in the ablative with *dē* or sometimes in the accusative. E.g., *I congratulate you on your victory*, *tibi dē victōriā grātūlōr*, or *tibi victōriam grātūlōr*. *Consentiō* usually takes *cum* and the ablative.

43. (ii.) So with verbs of *commanding, obeying, serving; persuading; threatening; meeting, resisting*, etc. Such are—

<i>Oppose</i> , <i>adversōr</i> .	<i>Meet</i> , <i>occurrō</i> .
<i>Govern</i> , <i>impērītō</i> .	<i>Obey</i> , <i>pārēō</i> .
<i>Order</i> , <i>impērō</i> .	<i>Persuade</i> , <i>persuādēō</i> .
<i>Charge with</i> , <i>mandō</i> .	<i>Promise</i> , <i>prōmittō</i> .
<i>Threaten</i> , <i>mīnōr</i> .	<i>Resist</i> , <i>rēsistō</i> .
<i>Obey</i> , <i>ōboediō</i> .	<i>Serve</i> , <i>serviō</i> .
<i>Withstand</i> , <i>obstō</i> .	<i>Advise</i> , <i>suādēō</i> .
<i>Hearken to</i> , <i>obtempērō</i> .	<i>Moderate</i> , <i>tempērō</i> .
<i>Go to meet</i> , <i>obviām ēō</i> .	

*Obs.*—*Iūbēō* and *ōbēō* (§ 32), being transitive verbs, take an accusative of the direct object. *Impērō*, *mōdērōr*, *tempērō*, and some other verbs are used both as transitives and as intransitives: see Dictionary.

44. (iii.) Verbs of *showing, demonstrating, telling, replying* usually have a person as indirect object:—

<i>Demonstrate</i> , <i>dēmonstrō</i> .	<i>Show</i> , <i>monstrō</i> , <i>ostendō</i> .
<i>Say</i> , <i>dīcō</i> .	<i>Reply</i> , <i>respondēō</i> .

45. (iv.) Verbs expressing *to be added to, to join, be near, be in front of, be next to, fall short of, fail*, etc., are found with the dative:—

<i>Approach, be added to</i> , <i>accēdō</i> .	<i>Attach to</i> , <i>iungō</i> .
<i>Add to</i> , <i>addō</i> .	<i>Excel</i> , <i>praecellō</i> .
<i>Join to</i> , <i>adiungō</i> .	<i>Set over</i> , <i>praefficiō</i> .
<i>Draw near to</i> , <i>apprōpinquō</i> .	<i>Be in front of</i> , <i>praesum</i> .
<i>Be wanting to</i> , <i>dēsum</i> .	<i>Excel</i> , <i>praestō</i> .
<i>Overhang</i> , <i>immīnēō</i> .	

NOTE.—*Praestō* is also used as a transitive verb, meaning *to provide*; *Provide us with this*, *hōc nobīs praestā*. *Dēficiō* is likewise transitive.

46. (v.) Many compounds of *ād*, *antě*, *cum*, *īn*, *intěr*, *ōb*, *post*, *prae*, *prē*, *sūb*, *sūpěr* take a dative of the indirect object. Such are—

*Ādhaerescō*, *affěrō*, *appōnō*.  
*Antēcēdō*, *antěpōnō*.  
*Congrūō*, *constō*, *convěnīō*.  
*Impōnō*, *incīdō*, *incumbō*, *infěrō*, *inhaerěō*, *inscribō*.  
*Intercēdō* (*obstruct*), *interdicō*.  
*Obstō*, *occurrō*, *offěrō*, *oppōnō*.  
*Posthābēō*, *postpōnō*.  
*Praedicō*, *praedicō*, *praefěrō*, *praepōnō*, *praescribō*.  
*Prōmittō*, *prēpōnō*.  
*Subvēnīō*, *succurrō*, *suppōnō*.  
*Sūperpōnō*, *sūpervēnīō*.

47. (vi.) All compounds of *sum*, except *possum*, admit a dative of the object :—

<i>Be away from</i> , <i>absum</i> .	<i>Be in the way of</i> , <i>obsum</i> .
<i>Be present</i> , <i>adsum</i> .	<i>Be in front of</i> , <i>praesum</i> .
<i>Be wanting to</i> , <i>dēsum</i> .	<i>Be for the good of</i> , <i>prōsum</i> .
<i>Be in</i> , <i>insum</i> .	<i>Be underneath</i> , <i>subsum</i> .
<i>Be present among</i> , <i>intersum</i> .	<i>Be over from</i> , <i>sūpersum</i> .

NOTE.—*Possum* is sometimes found with an accusative of extent (§ 135); e.g., *We cannot all do all things*, *Nōn omniā possūmus omnēs*.

48. (vii.) A dative is used with these miscellaneous words and phrases :—

*To put down to the credit or debit of*, *acceptum*, *expensum*  
*hābērě* or *rěferrě*.  
*To indict*, *dīem dicērě*.  
*To have faith in*, *fīdem hābērě*.  
*To give, return thanks to*, *grātīas āgěrě*.  
*To wed* (lit., *to take the veil for*), *nūbērě*.  
*To cause to mix with*, *miscērě*.  
*To be in the way of, meet*, *obvīus essě*, *obvīam īrě*.  
*To apply oneself to* (literature, etc.), *stūdērě*.  
*To cheat*, *verbā dārě*.

For the dative with impersonal verbs, see § 70.

49. (viii.) Many adjectives and adjective-participles, expressing ideas similar to those of the verbs enumerated, take a dative. Such are—

- (a) *Commōdūs, convēniens, grātūs, āmicūs, inimicūs, infestūs, contrāriūs.*
- (b) *Imminens, obnoxius.*
- (c) *Contigūūs, affinis, proximūs, pār, dispār, similis* (see also § 40, NOTE 2).

50. (ix.) The difference in meaning in the following phrases should be remarked :—

- To be on guard against some one, cāvērē āliquem or āb āliquō;*  
*to have a care for some one, cāvērē ālicuī.*
- To ask some one's advice, consūlērē āliquem; to consult some one's*  
*interests, consūlērē ālicuī.*
- To meet some one, convēnirē āliquem; it suits some one, convēnit*  
*(impers.) ālicuī or rēs convēnit ālicuī.*
- To fear some one, mētūrē āliquem; to fear for some one,*  
*mētūrē ālicuī.*
- To keep one's promise, praestārē fidem; to excel some one,*  
*praestārē ālicuī.*
- To promise some thing, prōmittērē āliquīd; to give a promise to*  
*some one, prōmittērē ālicuī.*
- To set some one free, solvērē āliquem; to pay some one, solvērē*  
*ālicuī.*

#### ABLATIVE AS OBJECT.

Some substantives, adjectives, and verbs are followed by an ablative case representing the English object, direct or indirect. In reality the ablative is one of separation, instrument, etc.

51. (i.) Verbs and adjectives expressing *to abound in*, *to be wanting in*, govern an ablative case. *E.g.,*

*The ash-trees are being stripped of their leaves,*  
*fōlis viduāntūr ornī,*  
*Rich in lands,*  
*divēs āgris.*

NOTE 1.—Many such verbs and adjectives admit the genitive in place of the ablative; e.g., *Gaul is crowded with traders, rēfertā Gallia nēgōtiātōrum est.*



NOTE 2.—Ėgĕō, indĭgĕō, complĕō, implĕō, may take the genitive or ablative. (See § 39.)

52. (ii.) Verbs (usually compounded with *āb*, *dē*, or *ex*), which express separation or division, take an ablative without or with a preposition. Such are—

<i>Abstain from</i> , <i>abstĭnĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Relieve of</i> , <i>lĕvārĕ</i> .
<i>Retire from</i> , <i>dĕcĕdĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Set free from</i> , <i>lĭbĕrārĕ</i> .
<i>Desist from</i> , <i>dĕsistĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Strip of</i> , <i>nŭdārĕ</i> .
<i>Go out from</i> , <i>excĕdĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Rob of</i> , <i>orbārĕ</i> .
<i>To shut out from</i> , <i>exclŭdĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Deprive of</i> , <i>prĭvārĕ</i> .
<i>Interdict from</i> , <i>interdicĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Release from</i> , <i>solvĕrĕ</i> .

\* NOTE 1.—In dependence on such verbs, a preposition is always used with words denoting *persons*.

\* NOTE 2.—*Interdicō* takes a dative of the person cut off and an ablative of that from which he is cut off; e.g., *He debars the Romans from all Gaul*, *omnĭ Gallĭā interdicĭt Rōmānĭs* (dative).

53. (iii.) The following adjectives take an ablative:—*contentŭs* (*content with*), *dignŭs* (*worthy of*), *indignŭs* (*unworthy of*), *frĕtŭs* (*relying upon*), *praeditŭs* (*endued with*).

54. (iv.) So also the verbs *dignŏr* (*deem worthy*), *ŭtŏr* (*use*), *ābŭtŏr* (*use up or misuse*), *frŭŏr* (*enjoy*), *fungŏr* (*perform*), *nĭtŏr* (*rest upon*), *pŏtĭŏr* (*get possession of*), *vescŏr* (*eat*).

*Obs.*—The ablative with most of these may be explained as instrumental; e.g., *Pŏtĭŏr regnŏ*, *I make myself powerful by means of the kingship*; *Vescŏr pānĕ*, *I feed myself with bread*. Similarly with *vĭvŏ* (*live on*); e.g., *Piscĭbŭs ĕt ōvĭs āvĭum vĭvunt*, *they live on fish and birds' eggs*.

55. (v.) *Ōpŭs* (*need*), *ŭsŭs* (*use*), also take an ablative. *E.g.*,

<i>There is need of gold</i> ,	<i>I have use for your aid</i> ,
<i>ŏpŭs est aurŏ</i> .	<i>ŭsŭs est tŭā mĭhi ōpĕrā</i> .

NOTE.—*Ōpŭs* may also be constructed as a predicate with a nominative of the subject; e.g., *A leader and head is what we need*, *dux nŏbĭs auctŏr ōpŭs est*.

## CHAPTER III.—VERBS PASSIVE, DEPONENT, AND IMPERSONAL.

### PASSIVE VERBS.

56. The active voice of a verb explains that the subject does something or is in a certain state; the passive voice explains that something is done to the subject. *E.g.*,

<i>I sing,</i> <b>cānō.</b>	<i>I slay a victim,</i> <b>hostiam caedō.</b>
<i>I am loved,</i> <b>āmōr.</b>	<i>I shall be killed,</i> <b>interficiār.</b>

NOTE.—Some few Latin active verbs correspond to English passives; e.g., *I am made*, **fiō**; *I am exiled*, **exsūlō**; *I am beaten*, **vāpūlō**; *I am placed on sale*, **vēnēō**; *I am killed*, **pēřēō**, **intēřēō**. These are used respectively as the passives of **fāciō**, **rēlēgō**, **verbērō**, **vendō**, **perdō**, **intēřimō**.

57. The direct object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes the subject of the same verb in the passive. *E.g.*,

<i>I will kill you,</i> <b>caedam tē.</b>	<i>You shall be killed,</i> <b>(tū) caedēris.</b>
--	--

58. When two accusatives depend on the active verb, both become nominative in the passive construction if the verb is factitive, or, in other words, if both refer to the same thing. (See § 34, NOTE.) But otherwise one of the accusatives generally remains dependent on the passive verb. (See § 35, NOTES 1, 2.)

59. Passive verbs are occasionally used in a reflexive sense; e.g., *I wash myself*, **lāvōr**; *I move (myself)*, *I dance*, **mōvēōr**; *I turn round*, **vertōr**; *I turn back*, **rēvertōr**.

\* NOTE 1.—**Vertō** is sometimes used intransitively; the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of **rēvertō** are regularly so used.

NOTE 2.—In poetry and in later prose (never in classical prose), passive verbs, and more especially perfect participles passive, are

sometimes used in an *indirectly reflexive* sense; *i.e.*, they signify that the subject performs an action, not on himself, but on something belonging to himself. In this sense they are found with an accusative of the direct object. E.g., *He girds on his (own) sword, accingit̃ur ensem*; *The moon puts off her horns, lūnā exūt̃ur cornūā*; *Boys used to go, having their satchel and slate slung over their left shoulder, pūērī laevō suspensī lōcūlōs tābūlamquē lācertō ibant.*

*Obs.*—This use must be distinguished from the poetical accusative of respect with intransitive verbs and with adjectives; e.g., *The horse quivers in its limbs, ēquūs trēmīt artūs*; *They are bare as to their arms, nūdāe sunt lācertōs.* This latter construction falls under the general heading of accusative of extent (§ 135).

60. It follows from § 57 that an intransitive verb, as it has no direct object, cannot be used in the passive voice except impersonally, *i.e.*, in the 3rd person singular of each finite tense, and in the infinitive mood. E.g., *I am envied, i.e., There is an envying of me, mīhi invīdēt̃ur.*

NOTE.—The gender of the perfect participle in the compound tenses of a passive verb used impersonally is always neuter; e.g., *I have been persuaded, persuāsum est mīhi.*

## DEPONENT VERBS.

61. There is a large class of Latin verbs which are represented by English active verbs, but of which the conjugation is passive in all finite forms, in the present and perfect infinitive, and in the perfect participle, while they have also the participles, the gerund and supines, and the future infinitive of the active voice.

*Obs.*—These verbs were named deponents, because, though mainly passive in form, they were considered to *lay aside* (dēpōnērē) their passive meaning. Many deponents were originally reflexive in sense (*e.g.*, *amplectōr, I embrace, lit., twine myself around*).

62. No part of a deponent verb, except the gerundive and sometimes (see § 64) the perfect participle, bears a passive meaning.

NOTE.—A few verbs have two forms, one active alike in form and in meaning, the other active in meaning only; *e.g.*, *mērēō, mērēōr, I deserve*; *pūnīō, pūnīōr, I punish.*

63. The following verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle)—

*To dare, audēō, ausūs sum.*

*To rejoice, gaudēō, gāvīsūs sum.*

*To be wont, sōlēō, sōlītūs sum.*

*To trust, fidō (and compounds), fīsūs sum.*

\*NOTE.—Prandēō (*I lunch*) and cēnō (*I dine*) are active throughout, with the exception of the perfect participles pransūs, cēnātūs, which are deponent in meaning (*having lunched, having dined*). So iūrātūs, coniūrātūs, pōtūs. The intransitive verbs ādōlescō (*I grow up*), nūbō (*I marry a man*), suescō (*I become accustomed*), have participles, ādultūs (*grown up*), suētūs (*accustomed*), nuptā (*married*).

\*64. The past participles of some deponent verbs are often used passively. Such are—

*Having gained or being gained, adeptūs.*

*Having confessed or being confessed, confessūs.*

*Having measured or being measured, ēmensūs.*

*Having tried or being tried, expertūs.*

*Having copied or being copied, imitātūs.*

*Having deserved or being deserved, mēritūs.*

*Having agreed or being agreed, pactūs.*

*Having shared or being shared, partītūs.*

*Having chosen by lot or being chosen by lot, sortītūs.*

Obs.—Some of these perfect participles may be used to render an English present participle; e.g., *Caesar, fearing this, sets out*, *Caesār id vēritūs prōficiēscitūr*.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

65. A verb can be used impersonally only in the third person singular of a finite tense, and in the infinitive.

Obs.—Impersonal verbs are so called as admitting of no construction with a subject of the 1st or 2nd person, and no definite subject in the 3rd person. Logically, the subject of an active impersonal verb is often the dependent infinitive or clause. *E.g.*, in the sentence *oportēt tē irē* the real subject of *oportēt* is *irē*, and it might be translated, *To go behoves you*.

66. Impersonal verbs are of two classes, according as their form is (A) active, (B) passive.

(A) **Active impersonal verbs** have no passive impersonal forms. They are chiefly of the second conjugation, and most admit a direct or indirect object which corresponds to the English subject. Most also admit a subject, which is usually a verb in the infinitive mood. *E.g.*,

*You ought to go,*  
 ȕportēt tē irē.

*We may go,*  
 līcēt nōbīs irē.

67. (i.) Impersonal verbs without an object. These express natural phenomena and are really personal intransitive verbs, their subject being contained in the inflexions. Such are—

*It lightens,* { fulgēt,  
 { fulgūrāt.  
*It hails,* grandīnāt.  
*It grows light,* lūcescīt.

*It is light or clear,* lūcēt.  
*It snows,* ningīt.  
*It rains,* plūīt.  
*It thunders,* tōnāt.

68. (ii.) Impersonal verbs with subject expressed as a clause in the accusative and infinitive. Such are—

*It is evident,* appāret.

*It is agreed,* constāt.

69. (iii.) Impersonal verbs with a direct object in the accusative, and (a) an infinitive as subject or (b) a genitive as secondary object. Such are—

*It seems,* dēcēt.  
*It misseems,* dēdēcēt.  
*It pleases,* dēlectāt.  
*It delights,* iūvāt.  
*It behoves,* ȕportēt.

}  
 Infinitive.

*It moves pity,* mīserēt.  
*It repents,* paenītēt.  
*It irks,* pīgēt.  
*It shames,* pūdēt.  
*It disgusts,* taedēt.

}  
 Genitive.

Examples.—*I am pleased to go,* iūvāt mē irē; *To lie misseems men,* dēdēcēt hōmīnēs mentīrī; *I am sorry for you,* mīserēt mē tūi; *He repented of his fault,* paenītūt illum culpae.

NOTE.—Iūvō (*I delight*), dēlectō (*I please*), are also used as personal verbs, the latter being rarely impersonal.

70. (iv.) Impersonal verbs with a dative of the indirect object, and an infinitive as subject. Such are—

*It happens, accidit.*

*It suits or is agreed, convēnit.*

*It is (my, thy, etc.) pleasure, libēt.*

*It is allowed, licēt.*

*It is clear, liquēt.*

NOTE 1.—The above, with the exception of libēt, licēt, liquēt, are also used as personal verbs.

NOTE 2.—Licēt is also constructed with a subject in the form of a subjunctive clause with or (more frequently) without ūt, and in the latter case may often be translated “though.” E.g., *You may say, licēt ūt dicās* (or *Licēt dicās*); *Even though this happen, licēt hoc evēniāt*. Similarly with ūt and the subjunctive are used accidit, contingit, evēnit (*it happens*).

71. (v.) Impersonal verbs with an infinitive as subject, and an indirect object in the accusative with ad—

*It belongs to, attīnēt.*

*It pertains to, pertīnēt.*

NOTE.—Both these are also used personally.

72. (vi.) The following verbs become impersonal if used with impersonal passive infinitives, i.e., with the passive infinitive of intransitive verbs (§ 60):—

*Began, coeptum est.*

*Begin, incipit.*

*Ought, dēbēt.*

*Be able, pōtest.*

*Cease, dēsīnīt.*

*Be wont, sōlēt.*

Examples.—*They began to make a noise, coepērunt obstrēpērē; A noise began to be made, coeptum est obstrēpi; Men are wont to err, sōlent hōmīnēs errārē; Mistakes are habitually made, sōlēt errārī.*

\*NOTE.—The perfect tenses passive of coepī and dēsīnō are also used personally with a passive infinitive; e.g., *These things began to be discussed, hae rēs āgī coep̄tae sunt; Most people ceased to read speeches, orātīōnēs ā plērisquē lēgī sunt dēsītae*. When, however, the infinitive is passive in form but reflexive in meaning (§ 59), the active forms of coepī and dēsīnō are used; e.g., *No one ceases to move, nēmō mōvērī dēsīnīt*.

73. (vii.) Rēfert (*it concerns*), where the English has a personal pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person as object,

is used with the **ablative singular feminine** of the corresponding **possessive adjective**. *E.g.,*

*It concerns me to do right,*  
**mĕā rĕfert rectĕ fācĕrĕ.**

**NOTE 1.**—The same applies to the 3rd person when the pronoun is reflexive; e.g., *He says that it concerns himself*, **dicĭt sūā rĕferrĕ.**

**NOTE 2.**—If the object in English is a substantive, or any pronoun other than a personal pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person or 3rd reflexive, **intĕrest** is to be used (§ 74).

*\*Obs.*—The possessive adjectives **mĕā**, **tŭā**, etc., probably agree with **rĕ** (abl. sing. of **rĕs**) in **rĕ-fert**, the original sense having been *it bears in the direction of my (thy, etc.) affairs*.

**74. Intĕrest** (*it is of importance*) copies **rĕfert** in construction if the object in English is a personal pronoun. But a substantive, or any pronoun other than a personal pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person or 3rd reflexive, is placed in the **genitive** case. *E.g.,*

*It is of very great importance to you and to me that you should be well,*  
**mĕā ĕt tŭā maxĭmĕ intĕrest tĕ vālĕrĕ.**

*It is to the interest of all to drive off the enemy,*  
**intĕrest omnĭum hostĕs dĕpellĕrĕ.**

The subject of **intĕrest** and **rĕfert** may be (i.) an infinitive or an accusative and infinitive (as in the examples given); or (ii.) a dependent clause (virtually an indirect question, see § 226) in the subjunctive; or (iii.) **intĕrest** may be constructed with **ŭt** or **nĕ**. *E.g.,*

*What he says is not so important as what he thinks,*  
**nōn tam intĕrest quĭd dicāt quam quĭd sentiāt.**

*It is very important for me to see you,*  
**mĕā magnĭ intĕrest, tĕ ŭt vĭdĕam.**

Or (iv.) the subject of **rĕfert** may be a neuter singular pronoun (**hōc**, **īd**, **illŭd**, etc.). For an example, see § 75.

75. *Rēfert*, *intērest* are qualified by an adverb, by an accusative neuter singular, or by a genitive form that expresses *value* (*magnī*, *parvī*, etc.; see § 128). *E.g.*,

*That is of very great importance to me,*  
*id mēa maximē rēfert.*

*It is to some extent my friend's affair,*  
*āmīcī mēi āliquantum intērest.*

*That is of small concern,*  
*illūd parvī rēfert.*

76. (B) Passive impersonal verbs are intransitive verbs used impersonally in the passive voice; see § 60. Almost any intransitive verb may be so used with the exception of *vōlō*, *quēō*, *sum*, and their compounds. *E.g.*,

*There is playing, they play.* *lūdītūr.*

*They sat down,* *sessum est.*

*They had come,* *ventum ērāt.*

NOTE.—The difference between the personal active and the impersonal passive construction may be seen from the following examples: (i.) *A rush is made to the walls*, or, *There is a rush to the walls*, *ād mūrōs concurrītūr*; (ii.) *They rush to the walls*, *ād mūrōs concurrunt*. Thus (i.) accentuates the action, (ii.) brings into prominence the persons who act.

*Obs. 1.*—Hence an English abstract substantive implying an action (*e.g.*, “a rush,” “a shout,” etc.) will often be represented in Latin by the impersonal passive of some intransitive verb.

*Obs. 2.*—Verbs which are only transitive cannot be used impersonally.

77. What is in the active form the subject is usually omitted in the impersonal usage. If retained, it appears as the agent in the ablative with *ā* or *āb*. *E.g.*,

*There is playing by me, I am playing,*  
*lūdītūr ā mē.*

78. The verb thus used may retain any indirect object or other extension admissible in its active usage. *E.g.*,

*You will consult your country's interests,*  
*ā vōbīs consulētūr patriāe.*

*They are going to Rome,*  
*Rōmam itūr.*



79. Impersonal verbs in a historic tense constructed with the infinitive have the present infinitive where, in English, the perfect infinitive is used. *E.g.*,

*You ought to have gone,*  
*oportuit tē irē.*

NOTE 1.—The same rule applies to *possum* and *dēbēō*; e.g., *You ought to have stayed, mănērē dēbēbās*; *He could have done that, illūd fācērē pōtuit*

\* NOTE 2.—The verb *possum*, both in its personal and in its impersonal use, represents a great variety of English expressions. *E.g.*,

*I could see if I liked, sī vellem vīdērē, possem.*

*Is it possible that you can see? pōtesnē vīdērē?*

*They have very great influence with me, apūd mē plūrimū possunt.*

*Possibly I shall see it, fīērī pōtest ūt illūd vīsūrū sim.*

*It is impossible to say, affirmārī nōn pōtest.*

## CHAPTER IV.—PARTICIPLES AND VERBAL NOUNS.

80. The infinitives, gerund, and supines are verbal substantives; that is, while admitting case-relations like substantives, most of them govern an object like the finite verb to which they belong. *E.g.*,

*To yield to enemies,*  
*cēdērē hostībūs (dat.).*

*By making use of strength,*  
*vīrībūs (abl.) ūtendō.*

NOTE.—The infinitive admits no case-inflexions, being an indeclinable neuter verbal substantive.

These verbal substantives are dealt with in detail in §§ 91—109.

### THE PARTICIPLES.

81. The participles are verbal adjectives; that is, they have the full declension of adjectives of one or three

terminations, while governing the same case as the verb to which they belong. *E.g.*,

*Hearing the speech,*  
**ōratiōnem audientēs.**

*Having done his duty,*  
**mūnērē suū functūs.**

NOTE 1.—Deponent participles conform to the exceptional rules of deponent verbs, §§ 61-64.

NOTE 2.—The present participles of some transitive verbs may be used as simple adjectives, in which case they may govern a genitive of the object. (See § 40, *b.*) *E.g.*, *A man very fond of money*, **vīr pēcūniāe āmantissimūs**; *Capable of enduring toil*, **pātiens lābōrīs**. But, *Loving money*, **pēcūniām āmans**; *Enduring toil*, **pātiens lābōrem**.

NOTE 3.—Combined with a substantive, the past participle passive often denotes an action performed on the person or thing expressed by the substantive. *E.g.*, *The murder of Caesar*, **occisūs Caesār**; *Before the foundation of Rome*, **antē Rōmam condītam**.

\*NOTE 4.—The future participle is used predicatively to express purpose in Livy and later writers; but this usage should not be imitated. *E.g.*, *He sent envoys to beg for peace*, **lēgātōs pācem rōgātūrōs mīsīt**.

\*NOTE 5.—The only future participles in use as attributes in classical prose are **fūtūrūs** and **ventūrūs**.

82. The present and past participles (especially the latter) are frequently used with a substantive or pronoun in what is commonly known as the **ablative absolute**.

*On the expulsion of the kings consuls were appointed,*  
**rēgibūs exactīs consulēs crēatī sunt.**

NOTE 1.—A better name for this usage is **ablative of attendant circumstance**, as it differs from an ablative of manner only in the predicative character of the participle: *Hannibal by setting an ambush with his wonted guile defeated the Romans*, **Hannibāl sōlitō dōlō** (abl. of manner) **insidiīs collōcātīs** (abl. absolute) **Rōmānōs vīcīt**.

NOTE 2.—The substantive in the ablative absolute is one that is *not* otherwise related (as subject, object, or dependent case) to the finite verb of the predicate. Thus: *Caesar having ascertained these facts sets out* becomes in Latin **Caesār dē hīs rēbūs certior factūs prōficiēscītūr** or **Caesār hīs rēbūs cognītīs prōficiēscītūr**. But **Caesārē dē hīs rēbūs certiorē factō prōficiēscītūr** does not mean the same thing.

\* NOTE 3.—Sometimes, generally owing to the omission of the antecedent to a relative, the participle apparently stands alone in the ablative absolute; e.g., *The general, after sending men forward to reconnoitre, sets out, impērātōr, praemissis quī explōrent, prōficiscītūr.*

83. In place of a participle in the ablative absolute may stand a second substantive or an adjective. *E.g.,*

*These things happened in Cicero's consulship,*  
**Cīcērōnē consulē haec factā sunt.**

*A small part of the summer being now left,*  
**exīgūā iam partē aestātis rēlīquā.**

84. The ablative absolute is exceedingly frequent in Latin prose, where it commonly represents an English clause introduced by a conjunction of **time**, **cause**, **condition**, or **concession**. *E.g.,*

(a) **TIME**: *When (or after) this was ascertained (or after ascertaining this), he departed,* **hāc rē cognītā ābīit.**

(b) **CAUSE**: *He fell, because he had received a wound (or in consequence of having received a wound),* **acceptō vulnerē concidit.**

(c) **CONDITION**: *If this is done, I will depart,* **hōc factō ābībō.**

(d) **CONCESSION**: *He advanced, though the Gauls resisted (or in spite of the resistance of the Gauls),* **obstantībūs Gallīs prōgressus est.**

85. The active voice has no past participle; i.e., there is no simple form to express the English “having loved,” “having gone,” etc. This deficiency may be supplied by the use of **cum** (*when*) followed by the pluperfect subjunctive active; or the passive participle may be used in the ablative absolute construction (§ 82). *E.g.,*

*Having heard this, he departed,*  
**haec cum audīvissēt (or hīs rēbūs auditīs) ābīit.**

NOTE.—Deponent verbs alone possess a past participle with an active sense. *E.g.,* from **vēr** (*I hunt*) comes **vērātūs** (*having hunted*). For exceptions to this rule see § 63, NOTE.

86. The same conjunction, with the pluperfect subjunctive passive, may replace the perfect participle passive. *E.g.*,

*The slaves, having been tortured, were put to death,*  
servī, cum cruciātī essent, necātī sunt.

87. Similarly, cum with the imperfect subjunctive active may take the place of the present participle active. *E.g.*,

*On hearing this he was glad,*  
cum haec audirēt, gaudēbāt.

NOTE 1.—The present participle is used when the idea to be expressed is that of mere *coincidence* in time; but when, as generally happens, the English present participle gives a *reason*, cum and the subjunctive must be used. Thus: *While listening to this he was pleased* = haec audiens gaudēbāt; but, *Because he heard this, or on hearing this, he was pleased* = cum haec audirēt, gaudēbāt.

NOTE 2.—For the present and past participles expressing a purely temporal relation dum may be substituted (with a present indicative), or ūt or postquam (with a perfect indicative). See §§ 200, 202.

88. The same principle applies to the expression of the present participle passive, there being no simple form for the English “being loved,” etc. *E.g.*,

*Augustus, being loved, was long emperor,*  
Augustūs cum amārētūr diū impērābāt.

NOTE.—What is in English a present participle must frequently be rendered in Latin by a perfect participle or its equivalent; e.g., *The river being now crossed, flūminē iam trāiectō*; *Spring being now come, cum iam vēr vērissēt*; *Fearing this he returned, haec vērītūs rēdīt*.

89. There is no future participle passive equivalent to the English “being about to be loved,” etc. For this must be substituted a periphrasis. *E.g.*,

*Being about to be put to death he confessed his crime,*  
cum in eō essēt ūt necārētūr, facinūs confessūs est.

NOTE.—In classical prose a similar expression would be employed in the active, the use of the future participle being almost confined to the periphrastic tenses formed with sum.

## THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

90. The **gerundive** is a verbal adjective of three terminations, and (whatever its original force) is always, except when used for the gerund in accordance with § 92, passive in meaning, and denotes that the action of the verb ought to be applied to the substantive to which it refers. It can be used either attributively or predicatively (§ 13, NOTE 2). The agent is expressed by the dative (§ 111). *E.g.*,

*Carefulness must be cultivated by us,*  
diligentiā cōlendā est nobīs.

*The State must be freed from fear,*  
mētū libērandā est civitās.

\*NOTE 1.—The gerundive *with a negative* is sometimes used attributively to express *what can be done*, rather than *what ought to be done*; e.g., *Hardships that cannot be escaped*, lābōrēs nōn fūgiendī. For the predicative use of the accusative gerundive, see § 242.

NOTE 2.—The gerundive is confined solely to transitive verbs. Duty or necessity may be expressed by intransitive verbs in the construction explained in § 94. (The gerundive of *frūor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *ūtōr*, and *vescōr* is used in the oblique cases, but these verbs were transitive in early Latin.)

91. The **gerund** is a neuter verbal substantive, used in the singular in all cases (except vocative). It is active in meaning, but, except in the genitive, and under some circumstances in the ablative, cannot govern a *direct* object. *E.g.*,

*The art of speaking,*  
ars dicendī.

*He conquers by fleeing,*  
fūgiendō vincit.

*Fit to govern all.*  
aptūs ad omnībūs impērandum.

*Obs.*—The gerund often stands in place of an abstract verbal substantive in -iō; e.g., *Accused of thieving (or theft)*, reūs fūrandī.

92. In place of the gerund and direct object the **gerundival construction** is generally used; the rule for which is

that the substantive (or word used in place of a substantive) is put in the case in which the gerund would have stood, and that the gerundive agrees with this substantive in gender, number, and case. This construction is invariably to be used instead of the accusative or dative of the gerund with a direct object; in the genitive either construction may stand, but in the ablative the gerundive is commoner. *E.g.*,

*Two commissioners for minting bronze and allotting lands,*  
*dūōvīrī aerī flandō, āgrīs assignandīs.*

*Fit to govern all,*  
*aptūs ād omnēs rēgendōs.*

\*NOTE 1.—The following are the main usages of the gerund and gerundive:—

- (a) The genitive depends upon another substantive or an adjective; *e.g.*, *ars dīcendī; lābōr viāe mūniendae; insciūs impērandī.*
- (b) The dative depends upon an adjective; *e.g.*, *commōdūs aedificandō*; or stands as a dative of the work contemplated (§ 145); *e.g.*, *militēs praesidiō tūendō rēlinquūt; dūōvīrī aerī flandō.*
- (c) The accusative depends upon a preposition, usually *ād*.
- (d) The ablative depends upon a preposition (commonly *in*), or stands as an ablative of instrument or cause; *e.g.*, *virēs acquīrīt ēundō.*
- (e) The gerundive is used in all cases adjectivally.
- (f) The nominative gerund is used as in §§ 94-96.

NOTE 2.—The beginner should remember that he may always substitute the gerundive construction for the gerund and direct object, and is advised to do so if in any doubt as to which construction he should use.

**93.** The genitive of the gerund or gerundive, depending upon *causā, grātīā* (*for the sake of, on the plea of*), is used to express purpose. *E.g.*,

*Those men cross the sea to acquire learning,*  
*illī descendī causā mārīā trāmittunt.*

*This he did to conciliate the people,*  
*īd pōpūlī conciliandī grātīā fēcīt.*

94. The **gerund** of an **intransitive** verb is used in the nominative singular with **est**, **ērāt**, etc., to imply duty or necessity. *E.g.*,

*There is (the duty of) going, i.e., One ought to go,*  
**ēundum est.**

*Obs. 1.*—This is the only construction in which the nominative of the gerund can be used.

*Obs. 2.*—The accusative gerund is similarly used with the infinitive **essē**, etc., in the construction explained in § 104.

95. If the person (**agent**) be expressed, it is put in the dative. *E.g.*,

*We must go,*  
**ēundum est nōbīs.**

96. The **gerund** so used may govern any case which is admissible with the verb to which it belongs. *E.g.*,

*You must enjoy life,*  
**tībi frūendum est vitā.**  
*One's parents ought to be obeyed,*  
**pārendum est pārentībūs.**

**NOTE.**—When the gerund thus takes a dative of the object, the agent is usually, to avoid ambiguity, expressed by the ablative with **ā**, **āb**; e.g., *Parents must be obeyed by their children*, **pārentībūs ā libērīs pārendum est.**

## THE SUPINES.

The supines are, respectively, the accusative and ablative cases of a verbal substantive (§ 80).

97. The **supine** in **-um** is joined to verbs of motion to express **purpose**, and may take an object in any case proper to its verb. *E.g.*,

*We have come to warn, not to annoy you,*  
**vēnimūs mōnītum tē, nōn flāgītātum.**

*Obs.*—The supine in **-um** is an accusative verbal substantive, and its use is like that of the accusative of names of towns (§ 113), the action being regarded as the goal; thus, **irē auditum** is parallel to **irē Rōmam**. It is very often used with the verb **irē** (*to go*).

98. Hence its use in the future infinitive passive with *irī* (a verb of motion), which, being intransitive in the active (*ěō*, *irě*), is therefore impersonal in the passive (see § 76). *E.g.*,

*I think they are going (lit., there is a movement) to kill  
Caesar, i.e., I think Caesar will be killed,*  
*pūtō Caesārem occīsum irī.*

NOTE 1.—Thus, in the example above, the accusative case *Caesārem* is in reality the object of the supine *occīsum*, and not the subject of *irī*.

NOTE 2.—This also explains why the future infinitive passive never varies to express number or gender, the supine being itself invariable; e.g., *I think your daughters will be loved*, *pūtō filiās tuās amātum irī.*

NOTE 3.—For the periphrastic future infinitive passive, see § 286.

99. The supine in *-u* is an ablative verbal substantive, and stands as an ablative of respect (§ 148) after certain adjectives and substantives. It is in common use only in the case of certain verbs of *saying*, *perceiving*, and *knowing*, with *nascōr* (*nātū*, *by birth*) and *faciō* (*factū*, *in doing*). It never governs an object. *E.g.*,

*Wonderful to say,*  
*mīrābilē dictū.*

*If it be lawful to say it,*  
*sī fās est dictū.*

NOTE.—The supine in *-u* is found with *fācilis*, *diffīcilis*, *mīrābilis*, and after *fās*, *nēfās*, *ōpūs*.

## THE INFINITIVE.

100. The infinitive mood is so called because it admits no limitations of person or (except when expressed by a participle and *essē*) of number.

NOTE.—The infinitive is originally a case—in Latin a dative or locative—of a verbal substantive, but is used as an indeclinable neuter substantive with many of the characteristics of a verb; it has voices and tenses, it may have a subject or object, and it is qualified by adverbs,



**101.** As indeclinable verbal substantives, the present and (more rarely) the perfect of the infinitive mood are used as **nominative** or **accusative** cases in the sentence, and are always neuter in gender. E.g., *To recall them or to restrain them by force was equally hazardous*, **illōs aut rēvōcārē aut vī rētīnērē pārītēr anceps ērāt** (nominatives); *I will teach Rullus to be silent*, **dōcēbō Rullum tēcērē** (accusative).

NOTE 1.—The infinitive thus used may of course govern any case proper to the verb to which it belongs. E.g., *It is a crime to put a Roman citizen in bonds*, **fācīnūs est vincērē cīvem Rōmānum**.

NOTE 2.—The other cases of the infinitive are supplied in prose by the gerunds and supines.

Obs.—Many English abstract nouns may be rendered by the Latin infinitive. E.g., *Love delights me*, **āmārē mē dēlectāt**; *Self-satisfaction was habitual with him*, **mōs ērāt ēī sibi plācērē**.

**102.** Many verbs require a dependent infinitive to complete their meaning—the prolativ infinitive; especially such as signify *will, power, duty*, and their opposites. E.g., *He determined to besiege Saguntum*, **Sāguntum oppugnārē stātūt**; *We ought to go*, **ōportēt nōs īrē**.

NOTE 1.—In the case of impersonal verbs, the so-called prolativ infinitive is in reality the subject. (See § 65, Obs.)

\*NOTE 2.—The construction of a prolativ infinitive with adjectives, and with verbs other than the above, is poetical, and is especially common in Horace. E.g., in prose, *Worthy to learn is not dignū discērē*, but **dignū quī discāt**. (See § 235.)

Obs.—The prolativ infinitive is sometimes called epexegetic or complementary.

**\*103. (i.)** The present infinitive takes the place of the imperfect indicative in rapid narrative (**historic infinitive**).  
E.g.,

*The soldiers began to halt, to waver, to fly,*  
**mīlītēs subsistērē, inclinārē, fūgērē.**

**(ii.)** Any tense of the infinitive may be used in **exclamations**. E.g.,

*To think that you, my dear Terentia, should be so worried now!*  
**tē nunc, mēā Tērentiā, sic vexārī.**

*Obs.*—The subject in the former usage is nominative, in the latter accusative. The subject of the historic infinitive is of the 1st or 3rd person. It has the sequence of a secondary tense. The usage is confined to present infinitives and the perfects *ōdissē* and *mēmīnissē*, and (in the best authors) to principal clauses only.

104. After verbs of thinking, knowing, perceiving, saying, and verbs expressing pleasure, grief, surprise, etc., the infinitive is regularly used in place of the (English) finite verb, and its subject is in the accusative case. The tense of the Latin infinitive is present, perfect, or future, according as the verb in the direct statement would have been present, past, or future. *E.g.*,

*I saw that I at any rate was in danger,*  
*essē mē quidem in discriminē vīdēbam.*

*They voted that envoys must be sent,*  
*censuerunt mittendōs essē lēgātōs.*

NOTE 1.—When the infinitive requires an object, that object will stand in the case proper to the verb; e.g., *I know that I am employing good counsels*, *sciō mē bonis consiliis ūtī*; *I feel that I am envied by others* (see § 60), *but that I am loved by you*, *sentīō mīhi āb āliis invīdērī, mē ā tē dilīgī*.

NOTE 2.—Such a sentence as *It is said that he went* (where in English a verb of saying, etc., is used impersonally) becomes in Latin *He is said to have gone*; i.e., *dicītūr ābīissē*, not *dicītūr ēum ābīissē* (accusative and infinitive). So, *It was said that you were ill*, *dicēbārīs aegrōtārē*. But *As Isoerates has been said to have stated*, *ūt ĩsōcrātem dixissē trādītum est*. So generally with verbs of saying, shewing, thinking, and perceiving, the personal construction is used in the simple tenses, the impersonal in the compound tenses. Cp. § 14.

NOTE 3.—It must be remembered that there is a special reflexive pronoun of the 3rd person (*sē*, *sūī*, *sībī*), and a corresponding possessive (*sūūs*); and that these words refer only to the *subject of the main verb*. *E.g.*, *He said that he had (himself) heard*, *dixīt sē audissē*; but, *He said that that (other) man had heard*, *dixīt illum audissē*; *He said that he would put up at his (own) country-house*, *dixīt sē ād villam sūam dēversūrum essē*.

*Obs.*—The pronoun must always be inserted in such sentences: *He said he heard* becomes *dixīt sē audissē*, not *dixīt audissē*.

NOTE 4.—With *inquam* and its parts the accusative and infinitive construction is not used, but the actual words are quoted. *E.g.*, “*I have heard*,” *he said*, *audīvī, inquīt*.

NOTE 5.—All appositive substantives, and all predicative substantives, adjectives, and participles, will of course be in the accusative case to agree with that to which they refer. E.g., *I am aware that you, wretch that you are, never take thought for the state, sentiō tē, vīrum nēquissimum, numquam rēipublicae consulēre; He understood that he was at last caught, intelligēbāt sē iam exceptum esse.*

105. The same construction may follow any verb, or phrase equivalent to a verb, expressing declaration or feeling. Such are—*fāmā est; ōpiniō, spēs, mētus est, etc.; certiōr fiō (I am informed); auctōr sum (I vouch for it that).* E.g.,

*It was clear that they, not having been admitted, would at once go to Carthage,*

*appārēbāt eōs nōn admissōs prōtīnūs Carthāginem itūrōs esse.*

*There is a story that a youth was seen by him in his sleep,*  
*fāmā est in quīetē vīsum esse āb eō iūvenem.*

*Some vouch for the statement that the rings filled up more than three bushels,*

*sūpēr trēs mōdiōs ānūlōs explēvissē sunt quīdam auctōrēs.*

106. After verbs of ordering, asking, advising, persuading, endeavouring, what is in English an infinitive must in Latin be represented by the subjunctive mood introduced by *ūt* or *nē*. E.g.,

*He warns him to avoid all suspicion for the future,*  
*mōnēt ūt in rēliqum tempūs omnēs suspiciōnēs vitēt.*

*He told his men not to advance too far,*  
*impērāvīt sūis nē longiūs prōgrēderentūr.*

Obs. 1.—For the tense of the subjunctive, see § 213.

Obs. 2.—For the use of *quō* with comparatives see § 278, NOTE 1.

107. But *iūbēō, vētō*, and *cōnōr* take an accusative and infinitive. E.g.,

*He bade them await his coming,*  
*eōs adventum sūum expectārē iussīt.*

*In vain you strive to save my life,*  
*frustrā vitae mēae subvērē cōnāminī.*

108. Verbs of wishing, such as *cūpiō*, *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, etc., admit either the infinitive, with subject (if expressed) in the accusative, or (except *nōlō*) the subjunctive with or without (§ 243) *ūt* or with *nē*. *E.g.*,

*Do not believe it,*  
*nōlī id pūtārē.*

*I should like him to be a friend of yours,*  
*vēlim ūt tibi amīcūs sīt.*

*I prefer that you should not ask,*  
*mālō nōn rōgēs.*

*We desire you to enjoy your own goodness,*  
*tē tuā frūi virtūtē cūpimūs.*

\*NOTE.—*Cūpiō* always, *optō* never, takes the infinitive in the best prose.

109. After verbs of hoping and promising, what is in English often a present infinitive must in Latin be expressed by a future infinitive. *E.g.*,

*I hope to escape,*  
*spērō mē ēvāsūrum (essē).*

*He has promised to see to it,*  
*hōc sē cūrātūrum (essē) pollicītūs est.*

*Obs. 1.*—The subject of the infinitive, though omitted in English, must be expressed in Latin. See also § 286.

*Obs. 2.*—In the future infinitive, *essē* is more often omitted than not.

## CHAPTER V.—RELATIONS OF AGENT AND INSTRUMENT, PLACE, SPACE AND TIME, PRICE AND VALUE, COMPARISON, QUALITY, AND MATERIAL.

### AGENT AND INSTRUMENT.

110. The thing by which anything is done is the instrument, the person by whom anything is done is the agent. Both are expressed by the **ablative** case, the **instrument** without a preposition, the **agent** always with the preposition *ā* or *āb*. *E.g.*,

*He was slain with a Gallic arrow by a Gaul,*  
*ā Gallō Gallicā sāgittā est occīsūs.*

NOTE 1.—When it is desired to represent a person as the *means* rather than the agent in an action, *pēr* is used. *E.g.*, *He was informed by means of messengers, pēr nuntīōs certīōr factūs est.*

\* NOTE 2.—The ablative with *fāciō* in the sense of the English phrase *to do with* is instrumental; and *fiō* is similarly used in the sense of *to become of*. *E.g.*, *What are you to do with this fellow? quīd hōc hōmīnē faciās? What will now become of (be done with) me? quīd mē nunc fiēt?*

111. But with a gerund, gerundive, or verbal adjective ending in *-bīlīs*, and *sometimes* with the perfect participle passive or a tense formed by the verb *essē* with that participle, the **agent** is expressed by a simple **dative**. (See § 95, and § 96, NOTE.) *E.g.*,

*Here must we die,*  
*hīc nōbīs mōriendum est.*

*By whom have not Demosthenes' nights of study been heard of?*  
*cui nōn sunt audītæ Dēmōsthēnīs vīgilīæ?*

\* NOTE.—The use of the dative to express the agent with tenses other than perfect is poetical: *Land is beheld by you, water by me, terrā tībī, nōbīs aspiciuntūr āquæ.*

## PLACE.

Place may be viewed as—

- (A) The place to which one goes (accusative).
- (B) The place from which one goes (ablative).
- (c) The place at which an event takes place (locative or ablative).

112. (A) The place to which one goes must be expressed by the accusative with a preposition (*ād, in, etc.*). *E.g.,*

*They escaped to more open ground,*  
*in āptiōrā lōcā ēvāsērunt.*

113. But in the case of the name of a town or small island, or *dōmum, dōmōs* (*home, to their homes*), or *rūs* (*to the country*), no preposition is used. *E.g.,*

*We came to Brundisium and thence to Leucas,*  
*Brundisium pervēnimūs, indē Leucādem.*

*Return home,* *I will go into the country,*  
*dōmum rēditē. ēgō rūs ībō.*

\*NOTE.—*Ād* is used with names of towns to express to the neighbourhood of, before. *E.g., Marius arrived before Zama, Māriūs ād Zāmam pervēnit.*

114. Should the name of the town be preceded by a substantive (*e.g., urbem, oppidum*) in apposition, then a preposition must be used with that substantive. *E.g.,*

*To the city of Syracuse,*  
*ād urbem Sŷrācūsās.*

*To his village of Venusia,*  
*Vēnūsiam in vicum sūum.*

*Obs.*—Other such substantives are *mūnicipium, vicus, civitās, praefidium, cōlōniā, praefectūrā.*

115. With the names of countries and districts, and of large islands, a preposition is required, *ād* signifying *towards*, and *in* signifying *to*. *E.g.,*

*The army was transported to Sardinia,*  
*in Sardiniam trālectūs est exercitūs.*

*He is setting out for (towards) Africa,*  
*ād Africam prōficiscitūr.*

NOTE.—Where in English we say, “He came to his friends at Carthage,” the Latin idiom requires “to his friends *to* Carthage”: *Carthāginem ad amīcōs vēnīt.*

116. (B) The place from which one goes is expressed by the ablative with a preposition (*ā, āb, ē, ex, dē, etc.*) *E.g.,*

*He marched from the coast,*  
*ā mārī itēr fēcīt.*

*He will come down from the hills,*  
*dē montībūs descendēt.*

\*NOTE.—This ablative of separation is not to be confounded with the dative of the indirect object (§ 42) with verbs of taking away, robbing, etc. *E.g., I wrench the sword from you, tibi glādiū extorqueō.*

117. But in the case of the name of a town or small island, or *dōmō* (*from home*), or *rūrē* (*from the country*), no preposition is used (cp. § 113). *E.g.,*

*He fled from Athens,*  
*Āthēnīs aufūgīt.*

*He went away from home,*  
*dōmō ābīīt.*

*He has come hither from the country,*  
*rūrē hūc vēnīt.*

\*NOTE.—A preposition is required where the neighbourhood of a town is meant; e.g., *He left (the harbour of) Brundisium, discessīt ā Brundisiō.*

118. If, however, the name of the town is preceded by a substantive (*e.g., urbē, oppidō*) in apposition, the preposition must be used with the latter (cp. § 114, and *Obs.*). *E.g.,*

*From the city of Rome,*  
*ex urbē Rōmā.*

*From the town of Massilia,*  
*āb oppidō Massiliā.*

119. Names of countries and districts, and of large islands, require the preposition. *E.g.,*

*He set sail from Africa,*  
*ex Africā solvīt.*

NOTE.—The rule in § 115, NOTE, applies here. *E.g., He journeyed hither from his friends at Corinth, Cōrīnthō āb amīcīs hūc itēr fēcīt.*

*Obs.*—The above rules apply to *motion to* and *motion from* a place. In expressions of *measurement* a preposition is always required; e.g., *It lies ten miles from Rome, ā Rōmā dēcēm milīā passūm ābest.* So, always, *far from, longē āb, prōcūl āb; near to, prōpē āb.*

120. (C) The place **at which** an action is performed (unless it fall under § 122) is expressed by the **ablative** with **in**. *E.g.*,

*A city situated on sloping ground,*  
*urbs in acclivī lōcō sitā.*

*He pitches his camp on the bank,*  
*castrā in ripā pōnīt.*

NOTE 1.—Occasionally **ad** (§ 113, NOTE) or **apud** with the accusative is used, meaning *near to*.

NOTE 2.—Hence the use of **apud mē**, **apud illum**, etc., *at my house*, *at his house*.

121. The **preposition** is usually **omitted** when the substantive is qualified by **mēdiūs** or **tōtūs**. *E.g.*,

*A river runs in the middle of the city,*  
*flūmēn mēdiā urbē flūīt.*

*This is being noised abroad throughout the whole province,*  
*haec tōtā prōvinciā pervulgantūr.*

\*NOTE 1.—The following ablatives may also be used without a preposition: **lōcō**, **dextrā**, **laevā**, **terrā mārīquē**, and (if accompanied by an adjective or genitive) **lōcīs**, **partē**, **partībūs**, **rēgiōnē**.

NOTE 2.—In *poetry* many substantives are used in the ablative without a preposition, and with or without an epithet, to denote *place where*; but this licence must on no account be imitated in prose.

122. The name of the **town** or small island **at which** a thing takes place is in the **ablative without a preposition** if it be singular of the third declension, or plural of any declension; but singular names of towns of the first and second declensions and a few of the third declension employ **locative** forms (identical with the genitive in the first and second declensions). *E.g.*,

*I was stopping at Athens,*  
*Āthēnīs mānēbam.*

*He is living at Rome,*  
*Rōmae vivīt.*

*He lives at Malta,*  
*Mēlitae vivīt.*

*He was born at Naples,*  
*Nēāpōlī nātūs est.*

*He died at Tarentum,*  
*Tārentī mortūūs est.*

*He was born at Tibur,*  
*Tibūrī nātūs est.*

NOTE 1.—Original locative forms are seen in *e.g.*, **Rōmai** (an old form of **Rōmae**), **Cōrīnthī**, and **Karthāgīnī**.



NOTE 2.—Names of countries and large islands require the preposition: *e.g.*, *In Africa*, *īn Afrīcā*; *In Sicily*, *īn Siciliā*. Cp. §§ 115, 119.

NOTE 3.—Note also the forms *dōmī* (*at home*), *hūmī* (*on the ground*), *bellī*, *milītiæ* (*at the wars*), *rūrī* (*in the country*); and *ānimī* in phrases such as *ægēr ānimī*, *sick at heart*.

123. The road by which one goes is expressed by the simple ablative. *E.g.*,

*Starting for the Hiberus (Ebro) by the sea-coast,*  
*prōfectūs ād Hībērum mārītīmā ōrā.*

\*Obs.—This use of the ablative, in which the place is also the means, is partly local and partly instrumental (see p. 53).

NOTE.—The more common adverbs of place are: *hūc* (*hither*), *illūc* or *ēō* (*thither*), *quō* (*whither*), *hinc* (*hence*), *illinc* (*thence*), *indē* (*thence*), *undē* (*whence*), *hīc* (*here*), *illīc* (*there*), *ībi* (*there*), *quā* (*where*), *ūbi* (*where*).

## SPACE AND TIME.

Space and time may be viewed in two ways, according as the question to be answered is (A) Of what extent? or (B) At what point? The former question is answered by the accusative of extent, the latter by the ablative of time and by the place-constructions mentioned in §§ 120-122.

124. (A) The accusative is the case for the expression of all statements of duration, length, etc., of time or space. *E.g.*,

*He is thirty years old,*  
*trīgintā annōs nātūs est* (lit., *he has been born for thirty years*).  
*He was travelling for two days,*  
*bidūm itēr faciēbāt.*  
*The hill was 200 feet high,*  
*altūs ērāt mons dūcentōs pēdēs.*

NOTE.—The distance at which an event takes place is expressed by the ablative of measure preceded by *ā* or *āb* used adverbially; *e.g.*, *He fortified a camp eight miles away*, *āb octō milībūs passūm castrā mūnīit* (lit., *distant by eight miles*). But if the point from which the

measurement is made is specified, it is expressed by an ablative with *ā* or *āb*, and the word or words denoting the distance are put in the accusative (of extent) or in the ablative (of measure); e.g., *He fortified a camp eight miles from Rome, octō milīā (or milībūs) passūm ā Rōmā cāstrā mūnīit.* (Cp. § 119, Obs.)

**125. (B)** But the ablative is the case expressing the time at which or within which an action takes place. *E.g.,*

*The Arabs wander about the plains in winter and in summer,*  
**Arābēs campōs hīemē ēt aestatē pērāgrant.**

*He completed the journey in two days,*  
**bīdūō itēr confēcīt.**

*Within fifteen days of his arrival in winter quarters,*  
**dīēbūs quīndēcim quībūs īn hībernā ventum est.**

\*NOTE 1.—The use of the ablative to express extension instead of the accusative is rare in Latin of the best period and is not to be imitated; e.g., *For nine years he so behaved himself, nōvem annīs itā sē gessīt.*

\*NOTE 2.—The preposition *īn* is used when a distributive or adverbial numeral forms part of the expression; e.g., *We receive news thence barely three times a year, indē vix tēr īn annō nuntīum excipīmūs.*

**126.** The date at which an event takes place may also be viewed as so long before or after another event. This can be expressed (i.) by the ablative of the degree of difference (§ 129) with *antē* or *post* used adverbially, or (ii.) by *antē* or *post* used as a preposition governing the accusative and placed either before or after the numeral or other adjective. *E.g., He arrived ten days afterwards* may be expressed thus:—

(i.) **Pervēnīt dēcem dīēbūs post or dēcem post dīēbūs.**

(ii.) **Pervēnīt post dēcem dīēs or dēcem post dīēs.**

NOTE 1.—If *quam* follows, the ordinal numerals may be used instead of the cardinal, the ablative then expressing “time at which”; e.g., *302 years after the foundation of Rome, annō trēcentēsīmō altērō post (or post trēcentēsīmum altērū annū) quam condītā est Rōmā.*

\*NOTE 2.—To express *ago*, *ābhinc* is used with cardinal numerals and the accusative; e.g., *He died fourteen years ago, ābhinc annōs quattūordēcim mortūūs est.*

## PRICE AND VALUE.

127. The price for or with which a thing is bought, sold, etc., is expressed (1) by the **genitive** forms **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūrīs**, **mīnōrīs**, and (2) by the **ablative** of other words.

*Bought at what price? For little. At what price, I say? For eight asses. Take it away,*

**Quantī emptum? Parvō. Quantī ergō? Octussībūs. Aufēr.**

128. The greatness or smallness of the **value** at which a thing is held is expressed by the **genitive** of certain words (**tantī**, **quantī**, **magnī**, **parvī**, **plūrīs**, **mīnōrīs**, **plūrīmī**, **maxīmī**, **mīnīmī**, **floccī** (*flock of wool*), **assīs** (*penny*), **hūiūs**, **nīhīlī**, etc.); but with the verb **aestīmō** the **ablative** may also be used.

*He does not value the whole state at a straw,*  
**tōtam rem publicam floccī nōn faciūt.**

*He is esteemed more highly than Lucius,*  
**plūrīs hābētūr quam Lūciūs.**

*I think that virtue should be valued highly,*  
**virtūtem magnō aestīmādam pūtō.**

*\*Obs.*—The ablative of price is probably instrumental (p. 53), the price being regarded as the instrument of purchase; but the use of the ablative to denote the value *at* which a thing is held is local, the locative having for the most part become merged in the ablative. The forms **tantī**, **magnī**, **parvī**, etc., are probably genitives of quality.

## COMPARISON.

129. With a comparative an **ablative of measure** may be used to answer the question, “By how much?” and an **ablative of the standard** from which divergence is reckoned to answer the question, “Than what?” *E.g.,*

*The sun is many times larger than the moon,*  
**sōl multīs partībūs māiōr est lūnā.**

130. A large number of so-called adverbs are really ablatives of measure. Such are *multō*, *paulō*, *nīhīlō*, *hōc*, *ēō*, *quō*, *tantō*, *quantō*, *dīmīdīō*. *E.g.*,

*God is (by) far wiser than men,*  
*est dēūs hōmīnībūs multō prūdētīōr.*

\*NOTE 1.—*Ēō . . . quō* are respectively the ablative singular neuter of *is* and *quī*, and literally signify “by so much” . . . “by how much.” They correspond to the phrase “in proportion as,” and to “the . . . the.” *E.g.*, *You will do that better in proportion as you do it sooner, The sooner you do that the better, quō cītīūs, ēō mēlīūs īd faciēs* (lit., *By how much the sooner you do that, by so much the better you will do it*). The same applies to *tantō . . . quantō*. *E.g.*, *He feared the more in proportion as the affair was more plain, tantō plūs mētūēbāt quantō rēs āpertīōr ērāt; His boldness is in inverse proportion to his wickedness, quantō nēquīōr, tantō mīnūs audax est.*

*Obs.*—The clause containing the relative (*quō*, *quantō*) usually precedes the other.

\*NOTE 2.—The use of *ēō . . . quō*, meaning *thither . . . whither*, must not be confused with the above. It can of course stand with verbs alone, while the former can only stand with comparatives. *E.g.*, *Caesar was hurrying to the place whither he had already sent forward his troops, ēō festīnābāt Caesār quō iam cōpiās sūās praemīsērāt.*

131. The standard of comparison may also be introduced by *quam* (*than*), in which event it remains in the same case as that which is compared with it. *E.g.*,

*The sun is larger than the moon,*  
*sōl māiōr est quam lūnā.*

*I think that he is more learned than you,*  
*illum doctīōrem essē quam tē pūtō.*

132. This is the regular construction when the standard of comparison is expressed in the form of a clause or an infinitive mood. *E.g.*,

*This is something other than what I thought (it was),*  
*ālīūd est hōc quam quōd pūtābam.*

*It is better to die nobly than to live disgracefully,*  
*mēlīūs est hōnestē mōrī quam turpītēr vīvērē.*

\*NOTE 1.—Positive adjectives with a comparative force are followed by *quam*, and also by *atquē* (or, before consonants, *āc*); *e.g.*,

*And another than Cato has said it, quōd ālīūs quam (or atquē) Cātō dixit.* The adverbs *pārītēr, sīmīlītēr, aequē, sīmūl* (*as soon as*), usually take *āc, atquē.* So *īdem atquē, the same as.*

NOTE 2.—*Quam* is joined to the adverbs *antē, priūs, post, postēā,* either as one word (*postquam, etc.*) or separately. See § 291, NOTE 2.

NOTE 3.—For other constructions expressing comparison, see §§ 179, 180.

NOTE 4.—After *plūs, mīnūs, ampliūs,* followed by a numeral, *quam* is omitted; e.g., *Two hundred and more were slain, plūs dūcentī caesī sunt.*

NOTE 5.—Observe: *Quicker than I hoped, spē mēā cēlērīūs; Quicker than any one expected, spē omnīum cēlērīūs; More than right, plūs iustō; It was done almost before it was mentioned, prōpē cēlērīūs dictō factum est.*

NOTE 6.—*Mālō* (*I prefer*) takes *quam*; e.g., *I preferred to go away rather than to stay, ābīrē quam mănērē mālū.*

## QUALITY AND MATERIAL.

133. Neither the genitive of quality nor the ablative of quality (or description) can stand without an epithet. *E.g.,*

*A boy of noble mien,*  
*ingēnūi vultūs pūer.*

*A man of advanced age,*  
*vīr prōvectā aetātē.*

NOTE.—The difference between the genitive and ablative of quality is that the former usually expresses more fixed and permanent qualities, the latter incidental and minor characteristics; e.g., *A man of shabby garb, but of most firm character, vīr sordīdā vestē, īdem ingēnūi constantissīmī.*

134. The genitive of material denotes that of which a thing consists, or its material or kind; the ablative of material requires the preposition *ex* in classical prose. *E.g.,*

*A squadron of three hundred horse,*  
*ālā trēcentōrum ēquitum.*

*A heap of corn,*  
*ācervūs frūmentī.*

*We consist of mind and body,*  
*ex ānīmō constāmūs et corpōrē.*

## CHAPTER VI.—VARIOUS RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY CASES.

### RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE.

The accusative is the case of the direct object, of the goal of motion, and of extent.

For the accusative of the direct object, see §§ 30-36, 59.

For the accusative of the goal of motion, see §§ 97, 112-115.

For the accusative of space and time (extent), see § 124.

The accusative follows many prepositions (§ 151). The accusative is also used as subject to the infinitive; see §§ 103 (ii.), 104.

**135.** The neuter of an interrogative or relative pronoun may stand as an **accusative of respect**, and a similar construction is used in poetry with other words (see § 59, *Obs.*).

*E.g.,*

*Why* (lit., *as to what*) *does he lecture me?*  
**quīd illē mē castīgāt?**

*I was anxious because* (lit., *as to the fact that*) *you did not come,*  
**quōd nōn vēnistī, tīmēbam.**

NOTE 1.—Hence the rendering of *But if* by **quōd sī** (lit., *as to which, if . . .*), and of *What about the fact that . . .?* by **quīd, quōd . . .?** (with indicative).

\*NOTE 2.—To this usage belong the phrases, *At that time of life* **īd aetātis**; *At that point of time,* **īd tempōris**; *As far as I am concerned,* **mēam vīcem**; *For a great (the most) part,* **bōnam (maxīmam) partem**.

136. The accusative singular neuter of many adjectives is used adverbially. *E.g.*,

*In manly excellence he is easily the first,*  
virtutē facilē princeps est.

NOTE.—Hence the adverbs multum, paulum, postrēmum, pōtissimum, primum, etc. Similarly ceterā.

137. The accusative is freely used in exclamations. *E.g.*,

*O blessed Rome, new born when I was consul!*  
Ō fortunātam nātam mē consulē Rōmam!

\*NOTE 1.—The infinitive of exclamation (§ 296) is in reality an accusative.

\*NOTE 2.—Eccē, ēn (*lo!*), take a nominative in classical prose; vae (*woe!*), ei (*hei!* (*alas!*), take a dative; e.g., *Look, here is your letter!* eccē tūae littērae! *Woe to the vanquished!* vae victis!

## RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY THE GENITIVE.

138. For the genitive as object, see §§ 37-40, 69.

For the genitive of quality and material, see §§ 133, 134.

The genitive, except in the comparatively few instances in which it stands as object of a verb, is adnominal, *i.e.*, it is to be taken in close connection with a substantive, and not (like the other cases in most of their uses) with a verb.

For genitive forms denoting price and value, see §§ 127, 128.

\*NOTE.—The use of the genitive to denote that in respect of which an adjective is applicable (e.g., *Advanced in years*, aevī mātūrūs; *Reserved in his hate*, occultūs ōdīi) is confined to the poets and later prose writers.

139. The genitive (subjective) takes the place of an adjective, possessive or other, when the corresponding adjective is not in use. *E.g.*, *The armour of Pallas*, armā Pallādīs; but, *My opinion*, mēā sententiā; *The name of the Romans*, nōmēn Rōmānum; *A soldier of Pompeius*, milēs Pompēiānūs.

*Lat. Comp.*



140. The **subjective genitive** expresses the author or possessor of a thing, or the doer of an action. *E.g.*,

*Statues made by Polycletus,*  
Pōlyclētī signā.

*Caesar's gardens,*  
Caesārīs hortī.

*Injuries done by the citizens,*  
iniūriæ civiūm.

*A father's love,*  
āmōr patrīs.

NOTE.—In form there is no difference between the subjective and the objective genitive. Thus, *iniūriæ civiūm* may mean either “wrongs done *by* the citizens” or “wrongs inflicted *upon* the citizens.” To determine whether a genitive case be subjective or objective, the substantive upon which it depends must be turned into the corresponding active verb, and, according as the context requires the thing expressed in the genitive to be the subject or the object of the verb so obtained, the genitive will be subjective or objective. *E.g.*, in the sentence, *invāsīt hostēs tīmōr Rōmānōrum*, the genitive is manifestly objective, for the sentence implies *hostēs tīmēbant Rōmānōs*. But in the sentence, *tīmōr Rōmānōrum rem perdīdīt*, the genitive is plainly subjective, for the sentence implies *Rōmānī tīmēbant*.

141. The **partitive genitive** expresses the *whole* of which the substantive on which it depends is regarded as a part; hence it is also known as the genitive of the divided whole. *E.g.*,

*A large portion of mankind,*  
magnā pars hōmīnūm.

*Very many of the Romans,*  
plūrīmī Rōmānōrum.

NOTE 1.—It frequently depends upon an adjective used substantively in the neuter nominative or accusative; e.g., *Very little prudence*, *mīnimum prūdentiæ*.

NOTE 2.—It is similarly used with pronouns and adverbs of quantity; e.g., *āliquīd, pārūm, sātīs*, etc.; and even with adverbs of place; e.g., *Where in the world? ūbi terrārum?* Observe also, *At that time of life, id aetātis; At that point of time, id tempōris*. Cp. § 135, NOTE 2.

NOTE 3.—After such words of quantity, the English abstract substantive is often replaced by the genitive of an adjective of the second declension used substantively in the neuter singular; e.g., *What pleasantness! quīd iūcundī! No meanness, nīhīl sordidī*.

*Obs.*—But adjectives of the third declension always, and adjectives of the second declension sometimes take the ordinary adjectival construction; e.g., *Nothing that was abject, nīhīl hūmīlē* (not *hūmīlis*); *No meanness, nīhīl sordīdum*.



142. The **predicative genitive** expressing the person or thing whose nature, duty, or habit something is, is merely a use of the subjective genitive. *E.g.*,

*It is Nature's task (duty, or habit, etc.) to produce living things,*  
**Nātūrae est ānimālīa prōcrēārē.**

*To pursue virtue is the part (habit, mark, etc.) of a wise man,*  
**sāpientīs est virtūtem sēquī.**

\*NOTE.—Analogous is the use of the genitive of quality as a complement (§ 7, NOTE), which is found mostly in poetry; e.g., *To bring lands under one's sway, terrās sūae dicīōnis facērē.*

### RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY THE DATIVE.

For the dative as object, see §§ 41-50, 70.

For the dative of the agent, see § 111.

The dative is the case of the person or thing affected in the remoter degree.

143. The **dative of advantage** and **disadvantage**, the **dative of reference**, and the **ethic dative** are each a form of the dative of the person or thing remotely affected, *i.e.*, of the dative of the indirect object. *E.g.*,

*Be rich to thyself (advantage), poor to thy friends (disadvantage),*  
**estō dīvēs tībi, paupēr āmicīs.**

*He will be renowned in the eyes of all (reference),*  
**illē clārūs ērīt cunctīs.**

*But of a sudden, you know (ethic), Caninius comes to me in the morning,*  
**āt tībi rēpentē vēnīt ād mē Cāniniūs mănē.**

*Obs.*—"For," meaning "on behalf of," "instead of," must be translated by the ablative with **prō**. *E.g.*, *For (i.e., on behalf of) king, law, and flock, prō rēgē, lēgē, grēgē; Let us love virtue instead of vice, virtūtem prō vitīis diligāmūs.*

NOTE 1.—The dative of advantage, coupled with the verb **sum**, represents the corresponding tense of the verb **hābēō**. *E.g.*, *The consul had an only son, ērāt consūlī filiūs ūnicūs (= consūl hābēbāt filiū ūnicūm).*

\*NOTE 2.—The dative often stands for the English genitive of possession. *E.g.*, *We whose life is vigorous, nōs quībūs vitā vīgēt; He struck off the slave's head, servō cāpūt percussīt.* Such a usage is common in Livy and the poets, but not in Cicero.

\*NOTE 3.—The ethic dative is limited to the personal pronouns, and expresses interest, affection, surprise, or sarcasm. Cp. the Shakespearean “He plucked **me** ope his doublet.”

**144.** The dative of the complement (§ 7, NOTE), also called **predicative dative** or dative of result, is joined to the verbs *sum*, *dō*, *dūcō*, *hābēō*, *vertō*, and a few others. *E.g.*,

*These forces will be a protection to you,*  
*hae cōpīae vōbīs praesīdīō ērunt.*

*He sent his third line as a support,*  
*tertīam āciem subsīdīō mīsīt.*

*Gratitude is considered a burden,*  
*grātīā ōnērī hābētūr.*

*Obs.*—With *sum* and the passive of *dūcō*, etc., the predicative dative refers to the subject; with the active of *dūcō*, etc., to the object.

NOTE 1.—Such a dative as is treated of in § 143 is usually found in the same clause with the predicative dative when *sum* is the verb used; e.g., *The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors*, *exītīō est āvidum mārē nautīs*. Hence the name “double dative” is often given to this construction.

NOTE 2.—The predicative dative is always in the singular number, and has either no attribute or one denoting quantity (e.g., *magnūs*).

**145.** Purpose may be expressed by the **dative** of the **work contemplated**, which may be used with substantives and factitive verbs. *E.g.*,

*Three commissioners for partitioning lands were appointed,*  
*tresvīrī āgrīs dīvīdendīs crēātī sunt.*

*Obs.*—The gerund (without a direct object) and the gerundive (where the gerund would have a direct object) are frequent in this construction (§ 92).

NOTE.—To this usage belong the phrases, *To be solvent*, *solvendō essē* (lit., *to be for paying*); *To sound a retreat*, *receptūī cānērē*.

**146.** The **dative** must **not** be used to convey the idea of the **goal of motion**, though it occasionally has this force in poetry. *E.g.*,

*He sends me a letter (dative of advantage),*  
*mittīt mīhi littērās.*

*He sends a letter to me (motion),*  
*mittīt ād mē littērās.*

*A shout goes up to heaven,*  
*īt clāmōr caelō (VERGIL).*

147. A peculiar idiomatic assimilation often occurs (though not in the best prose) in expressions of naming, the proper name being put in the dative case in agreement with the substantive denoting the person or thing so named. *E.g.*,

*To this mountain was given the name Poeninus,*  
*huic monti Poenīnō nōmēn inditum est.*

*The name of Egerius was given to the boy,*  
*pŭērō Ēgērīō inditum nōmēn.*

NOTE.—In the best prose the name is put in the nominative; e.g.,  
*The name of the spring is Arethusa, fontī nōmēn Ārēthūsā est.*

#### RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE.

The ablative has three distinct usages:—

- (A) **Local** (§§ 120-123), with which may be classed its use to express the time at which or within which an action takes place (§ 125), including the ablative absolute (§§ 82-84), the value at which a thing is held (§ 128), and the part concerned (ablative of respect, §§ 99, 148);
- (B) **Instrumental** (§ 110), including its use to express price (§ 127), degree of difference (§§ 129, 130), quality and material (§§ 133, 134), manner (§ 149);
- (C) **Ablative proper** (*ablātŭs* = *taken away*), including the place from which one goes (§§ 116-119), the standard from which divergence is reckoned (§ 129), origin (§ 150).

The usages of the ablative as object (§§ 51-55) may be classed as instrumental, except those denoting separation or privation, which fall under the heading of ablative proper. The ablative is also used after some prepositions. See §§ 110, 151.

148. The **ablative of respect** is joined to verbs and adjectives. *E.g.*,

*You have gone wrong in the dates,*  
tempōribūs errastī.

*Keen in wit, he is advanced in years,*  
ingéniō ācēr, annīs prōvectūs est.

149. **Manner** is expressed by the **ablative of a substantive** accompanied by the **preposition cum** or an **epithet**.

*They treat for peace in good faith,*  
dē pācē cum fidē āgunt.

*He entrusted to you the whole of his property in all good faith,*  
tibi optīmā fidē suā omniā concessit.

*Obs.*—The Latin preposition **in** is not used with an ablative to express manner. **In optīmā fidē** would not be admissible for *in all good faith*.

NOTE 1.—Manner may also be expressed by an adverb, and therefore *quickly* may be rendered by (1) **cēlērītēr**, (2) **cum cēlērītātē**, (3) **summā cum cēlērītātē**, or (4) **summā cēlērītātē**; but NOT by the simple ablative **cēlērītātē**.

NOTE 2.—A few ablatives are exceptions to this rule, and are used alone to express manner. The chief are: *by chance*, **cāsū**; *by craft*, **dōlō**; *by chance*, **fortē**; *rightfully*, **iūrē**; *wrongfully*, **iniūriā**; *naturally*, **nātūrā**; *by choice*, **spontē**; *by force*, **vī**.

150. An **ablative**, with or without the preposition **ex** or **dē**, is used to express **origin**, chiefly with participles. *E.g.*,

*One born of Jove and Maia,*  
Iōvē nātūs ēt Māiā.

*Having become a deserter after being an ambassador,*  
transfūgā ex ōrātōrē factūs.

NOTE 1.—The preposition is usually omitted when immediate descent ("son of," "daughter of") is implied, but not when more remote descent is in question.

\*NOTE 2.—The usual words denoting origin are—**nātūs** (*son of*); **nātā** (*daughter of*); **ortūs**; **gēnītūs**; **sātūs** (*sprung from*).

## CHAPTER VII.—PREPOSITIONS.

151. The following prepositions are used with the ablative case :—

**Ā**, āb, absquē, abs, and dē;

**Cōram**, pālam, cum, ex, ē;

**Sīnē**, tēnūs, prō, and prae.

**Īn** and **sūb** are followed by the **accusative** when motion is implied, and by the **ablative** to denote rest. E.g., *Into the garden, ĩn hortum; In the garden, ĩn hortō; Up to the wall, sūb mūrūm; Under the wall, sūb mūrō.*

**Subtēr** takes the accusative (in poetry sometimes the ablative) and is not common.

**Sūpēr**, though regularly constructed with the accusative, is found in poetry with the ablative.

**Tēnūs** sometimes takes the genitive, but not in Cicero; it is always placed after its noun.

All other prepositions are used with the accusative only.

Note the following phrases :—

*Near the city, prōpē āb urbē.*

*Far from the city, prōcūl āb urbē.*

*In the front, in the rear, ā frontē, ā tergō.*

*Until late at night, ād multam noctem.*

*Furthermore, ād hōc (haec).*

*In the day- (night-) time, dē diē (noctē).*

*On purpose, dē (ex) industriā.*

*Anew, dē nōvō, dē intēgrō.*

*In a line with (opposite to) the bridge, ē rēgiōnē pontis.*

*To the interest of the state, ē rē-publicā.*

*To one's liking, ē sententiā.*

*Advantageous, ex ūsū.*

*In this wise, to this effect, ĩn hunc mōdum.*

*For the day after to-morrow, ĩn tertium diē.*

*In turns, ĩn vīcem.*

*As far as I am concerned, pēr mē.*

*Of itself (himself, themselves), for its own sake, pēr sē.*

*Through grief (in negative sentences only), prae dōlōrē.*

*Such is your affection, prō āmōrē tūō.*

*To the best of my power, with all my might, prō vīribūs, prō vīrīlī partē.*

*At nightfall, sūb noctem.*

## CHAPTER VIII.—PRONOUNS, COMPARATIVES, AND SUPERLATIVES.

**152.** The personal pronouns are:—(i.) first person, *ĕgō, nōs*; (ii.) second person, *tū, vōs*; (iii.) third person (reflexive), *sē*. *Īs* and *illē*, used for the 3rd person, are respectively determinative and demonstrative, not personal, pronouns.

As a rule the verb-ending is considered sufficient as a mark of person, the pronoun not being added in the nominative case except for the sake of emphasis or in drawing a contrast between subjects of different persons.

*E.g.,*

*I am going,*  
*ābēō.*

*I for my part did not believe it,*  
*nōn ĕgō crēdīdī.*

*I shall go to the country, but do you remain here,*  
*ĕgō rūš ībō; vōs hīc rēmānētē.*

And in cases where one predicate belongs to two or more subjects in different persons, such persons must *always* be expressed, the first person preceding the second, and the second the third. *E.g.,*

*You and I will go,*  
*ĕgō ēt tū ībīmūs.*

*Tullia and I are well,*  
*ĕgō ēt Tulliā vālēmūs.*

NOTE.—The pronoun must always be expressed in the accusative and infinitive construction. *E.g., You knew you were caught, intellexistī tē captum essē; I promise to remain, prōmittō mē mansūrum essē.*

**153.** The pronouns *mēī, tūī, sūī*, are used as objective genitives, never as possessives. *Nostrī, vestrī*, are always objective; *nostrum, vestrum* usually partitive. *E.g.,*

*Forgetful of myself,*  
*immēmōr mēī.*

*Love for you,*  
*āmēr tūī.*

But, *A friend of yours, āmicūs tūūs.*

*Hatred of you,*  
*ōdīum vestrī.*

*Who of us does not know?*  
*quīs nostrum nescīt?*

NOTE.—Any case or person may be strengthened by the addition of the pronominal adjective *ipsē* in agreement with the pronoun expressed or understood. E.g., *I myself saw, ipsē vidī, or ego ipsē vidī.*

154. (i) The reflexives *myself, yourself*, etc., are expressed by the oblique cases of *egō (nōs), tū (vōs).*

But for the 3rd person, whether singular or plural, must be used *sē, sēsē* (accusative); *sūi* (genitive); *sibi* (dative); *sē, sēsē* (ablative). And these, being reflexive, can refer to the subject only. E.g.,

*Libo committed suicide,*

*Libō sibi mortem conscīvit* (lit., *inflicted death upon himself*).

*The Germans, with a view to excusing themselves, sent envoys to Caesar,*

*Germanī lēgātōs ad Caesārem mīserunt sūi purgandī causā.*

NOTE.—A gerundive constructed with *mēi, tūi, nostrī, vestrī, or sūi*, is always genitive singular neuter, these forms being in origin the genitive singular neuter of the corresponding possessive adjectives. But with the forms *sē (sēsē)* and *sibi* the gerundive will be singular or plural according to the number of the subject to which the reflexive refers.

For the reflexive pronouns in the accusative and infinitive construction, see § 104, NOTE 3.

(ii) Reciprocal action is expressed by *intēr* with the pronouns *nōs, vōs, sē*; or by a double use of *aliūs* or *altēr* (the latter being used when only two persons are referred to) as in the examples below :—

*Sometimes they looked stealthily at one another,*  
*furtim nonnumquam intēr sē aspiciēbant.*

*You linger, waiting for one another,*  
*aliūs aliū expectantēs cunctāminī.*

*We saw each other unexpectedly,*  
*altēr altērū necōpīnātō vidēbāmūs.*

NOTE.—*Aliūs* repeated in a different case also expresses the English “different” or “various.” E.g., *The various legions were resisting the enemy at different points, lēgiōnēs aliāe aliā in partē hostībūs rēsistēbant* (lit., *some at one point, others at another*). In a similar sense *aliūs* may be joined with one of its derivative adverbs, *aliās*, *at another time*; *aliībī*, *elsewhere*; *aliō*, *in another direction*; *alitēr*, *in another way*; *aliundē*, *from another quarter*. E.g., *Their modes of life are different, aliūs aliō mōrē vivunt* (lit., *they live, one in one way, another in another*).



155. The possessive adjectives of the 1st and 2nd persons singular and plural are *měūs, tŭūs, nostěr, vestěr*. But in the case of the 3rd person the genitive case of *is* or of *illě* is used.

*I saw his (her, their—masc. and fem.) father,*  
*pătreġ eġiūs or illġiūs (ěōrum, ěārum, or illōrum, illārum) vġdġ.*

156. But if the possessor is also the subject of the sentence, the possessive adjective *sŭūs* must be used. *E.g.,*

*He saw his (own) father,*  
*pătreġ sŭiūm vġdġt.*

NOTE 1.—*Sŭūs* is sometimes used in the nominative, in agreement with the subject of the sentence, and it then refers to some other substantive, usually the direct object. *E.g., His fellow-citizens banished Hannibal, Hannġbălem sŭi cġvġs ě cġvġtătě ěġěěrunt.*

NOTE 2.—*Sŭi* (alone) is often used to denote *one's friends, followers, party, etc.* So *sŭă*, *one's property.*

*Obs.*—It is seldom necessary to express in Latin the English possessives, unless (1) there are several persons referred to in the sentence so as to cause ambiguity, or (2) there is a stress upon the possessive. *E.g., It was by my advice that you did this, mġō consġlġō haec fěcġstġ; Both Caesar and I desire your friendship, ět ěġō ět Caesăr vestram ġmġcġtġam cŭpġmŭs; I am going (to my) home, dōmum ěō; You drew your sword from its scabbard, glădġum ě văġġnă ěrġpŭġstġ.*

157. The demonstrative adjectives and pronouns are—

(i.) *This (near me, the speaker) = hic (haec, hōc);* (ii.) *That one (near you), That of yours (sometimes contemptuous), The aforesaid, or That one there = istě (istă, istŭd);* (iii.) *That (yonder) = illě (illă, illŭd).*

\* *Obs.*—By speakers in the law-courts *hic* is often used for *my client*, *illě* (and sometimes *istě*) for *my opponent*.

158. *Hic . . . hic, illě . . . illě*, are used for "*the one . . . the other*," "*one . . . another*." *E.g.,*

*One is grumbling, another is glad,*  
*hic quěrġtŭr, hic (or illě) gaudět.*

*One party wish nothing, another wish everything, to be changed,*  
*illġ nġhġl, hġ omġă mŭtări cŭpġunt.*



159. *The latter . . . the former* = *hic . . . illē* (*hī . . . illī*), *hic* usually referring to the nearer, *illē* to the more remote of the persons mentioned. *E.g.*,

*Dead are Cato and Pompeius, the former having perished by a voluntary death, the latter by an assassin's treachery.*

*mortuī sunt Cātō ēt Pompēiūs, illē vōluntāriā mortē, hic sīcārīi fraudē absumptūs.*

160. The determinative adjectives and pronouns are—  
(i.) *He (she, it)* = *īs* (*ēā, īd*); (ii.) *The same one* = *īdem* (*ēādem, īdem*); (iii.) *Self* = *ipsē* (*ipsā, ipsum*).

NOTE 1.—“The same as” is expressed by *īdem quī*, or by *īdem āc*. *E.g.*, *The same man as I saw, īdem āc vidī, or īdem quem vidī.*

NOTE 2.—*īs* (*ēā, īd*) is used as the personal pronoun of the 3rd person (see § 152); and in the genitive case as the corresponding possessive adjective (see § 155).

161. *īs* (*ēā, īd*), expressed or understood, is the antecedent of the relative *quī* (*quae, quōd*). *E.g.*,

*The man, whom you see, is king,*

(*īs*) *vīr, quem vidēs, rex est,*

*I mean that city upon which you have brought war,*

*ēam dicō urbem, cui bellum intulistī.*

NOTE.—*Quī* (*quae, quōd*) followed by the subjunctive mood after the antecedent *īs* (*ēā, īd*) implies “of such sort as,” etc. (see § 284). *E.g.*, *You are the sort of man they detest, īs tū ēs quem ōdērīnt;* *I am not the (sort of) man to do it, nōn ēgō īs sum quī faciām.*

162. *Ipsē* (*ipsā, ipsum*), “self” (adjectival), is not to be confounded with “self” in the reflexive sense. *E.g.*,

*I will do that myself* (adjectival), *I am defending myself* (reflexive).  
*īd ipsē faciām. mē tūcōr.*

\* NOTE 1.—But *ipsē* may be coupled, as an adjective, with any case of either the personal or the reflexive pronouns, and with nouns; it thus often represents an English periphrasis, such as “in person,” “of his own accord,” “with my own eyes,” etc. *The consul was there in person* = *ipsē ādērāt consūl.* *For my own part I gave 300 sesterces* = *ipsē trēcentōs nummōs largītūs sum.* *With my own ears I heard, and with my own eyes I saw it* = *ipsē audīvī, ipsē vidī.*

\* NOTE 2.—*Ipsē* throws emphasis on the word with which it agrees; *e.g.*, *It is yourself, not others, that you have conquered* = *tē ipsum vīcistī;* *You have been conquered by yourself, not by others* = *tē ipsē vīcistī.*

**163.** *Ipsē* may also stand in the genitive case immediately after any possessive adjective; it then agrees in number and gender with the *personal pronoun* understood in the possessive adjective. *E.g.*,

*By my own efforts,*  
*mēa ipsiūs opērā* (*ipsiūs* agreeing with *mēi*, genitive singular, understood in *mēā*).

*They kill their own children,*  
*sūōs ipsōrum libērōs trucidant* (*ipsōrum* agreeing with *sūi*, genitive plural, understood in *sūōs*).

\*NOTE 1.—Exactly similar is the use of *ūniūs* (genitive of *ūnūs*) with possessives; e.g., *By my services alone was the state preserved, mēō ūniūs bēnēficiō servatā est rēs publicā.*

\*NOTE 2.—The same construction is admissible with attributive adjectives and appositive nouns of any kind, but is rarer. *E.g.*, *The authority of us senators, nostrā sēnātorum auctōritās. By the gift of you, our excellent consul, tūō optimī consulis mūnērē.*

**164.** The relative pronouns are *quī* (*quae*, *quōd*), *who* (*which*); *quicumquē* (*quae*-, *quodcumquē*) and *quisquīs* (*quidquid*), *who- (which-) ever*. *E.g.*,

*Whatever were the acquirements of Marcus Piso, they were the result of education,*

*M. Pīsō quidquid hābuit, hābuit ex disciplinā.*

*Everything is happy which lacks nothing and which is perfect of its kind,*

*omnē bēātum est cui nīhīl dēest ēt quōd in sūō gēnērē explētum est.*

*Obs.*—*Quī* and *quicumquē* are also adjectives. *Quisquīs* is not used as an adjective in classical Latin.

**165.** Every relative pronoun or adjective has its corresponding **antecedent demonstrative**, which is not necessarily expressed, but may be understood. The antecedent and relative in such cases constitute a pair of **correlatives**. Such are—

<i>(He, that) . . . who . . .</i>	= <i>īs . . . . . quī</i>
<i>Such . . . as . . .</i>	= <i>tālīs . . . . . quālīs</i>
<i>As great . . . as . . .</i>	= <i>tantūs . . . . . quantūs</i>
<i>As many . . . as</i>	= <i>tōt. . . . . quōt</i> (indeclinable).

And, similarly, the correlative adverbs:—

<i>Thither . . . whither . . .</i>	= <i>ěō . . . . . quō</i>
<i>In the way in . . . which ;</i>	
<i>just as</i>	= <i>ěō mōdō . . . . . quōmōdō</i>
<i>Of the sort . . . of which ;</i>	
<i>such as</i>	= <i>ēiusmōdī . . . . . cūiusmōdī</i>
<i>As . . . as . . .</i>	= <i>tam . . . . . quam</i>
<i>(Then) . . . when . . .</i>	= <i>tum . . . . . cum</i>
<i>(There) . . . where . . .</i>	= <i>ibi . . . . . ūbi</i>
<i>(Thence) . . . whence . . .</i>	= <i>indě . . . . . undě</i>
<i>By as much . . . as . . .</i>	= <i>ěō . . . . . quō</i>
	<i>tantō . . . . . quantō</i>
<i>To such a degree . . . that . . .</i>	= <i>āděō . . . . . ūt</i>
<i>In such a way . . . that . . .</i>	= <i>itā . . . . . ūt</i>
<i>So much . . . that . . .</i>	= <i>tam . . . . . ūt</i>
<i>As often . . . as . . .</i>	= <i>tōtīens . . . . . quōtīens</i>

NOTE 1.—*Tōt . . . quōt* are indeclinable adjectives, and may be joined with any case; e.g., (*There are*) *as many opinions as men*, *quōt hōmīnēs, tōt sententiāe*.

NOTE 2.—*Quālīs, quantūs* of course follow the rules of relative concord (see § 15). *He is just such a man as I always wished for* = *tālīs est quālem semp̄r optābam*.

On *ěō . . . quō, tantō . . . quantō*, see § 130, NOTE 1.

NOTE 3.—When placed in the reverse order *cum . . . tum . . .* serve as a rendering of *Both . . . and especially . . .* or some such expression; e.g., *He was forming plans that were hurtful not only to his country, but also especially so to himself*, *consilīā cum patriāe tum sibi inimicā cāpiēbāt*.

166. The interrogative pronoun is *quīs, quae, quīd*, asking the question *Who? Which? or What?* But, if the interrogative be coupled adjectivally with a substantive, the interrogative adjective, identical in form with the relative pronoun (*quī, quae, quōd*), is regularly used. *E.g.*

<i>Who is it ?</i>	<i>What is the colour of his dress ?</i>
<i>quīs est ?</i>	<i>quī cōlōr vestītūs ?</i>

\*NOTE 1.—This rule as to the distinction between the adjectival and pronominal forms does not hold good in poetry.

\*NOTE 2.—*Quisnam* (pronoun) asks a question with emphasis; e.g., *Who in the world is afraid of this?* *quisnam haec mētūt?*

NOTE 3.—There is also an interrogative adjective *cūiās* (genitive *cūiātīs*), *of what country?* E.g., *Who and whence are you?* *quīs ēt cūiās ēs?*

167. The relative pronouns and adverbs mentioned in § 165 are also interrogatives, except *cum*.

*What manner of laws are those?*  
*quālēs istae lēgēs?*

*How are you?*  
*ūt vālēs?*

NOTE.—For *When?* use *quandō?* never *cum* (relative only). For *How?* use *ūt?* *quōmōdō?* or *quō pactō?*

For the interrogative particles, etc., see §§ 223, 224.

168. The indefinite pronoun *quīs*, *quā*, *quīd* (plural, *quī*, *quae*, *quā*), is used after *nē*, *sī*, *nīsī*, *num*, and means *any one*, *any*. The adjectival forms are *quī*, *quā*, *quōd*, *any*. E.g.,

*I asked whether any one had come,*  
*rōgāvī num quīs vēnissēt.*

*Take care that no woman knows it,*  
*fāc nē quā fēmīnā scīāt.*

NOTE.—In direct questions *ecquīs* (no feminine), *ecquīd* (pronominal) or *ecquī*, *ecquā* (*ecquae*), *ecquōd* (adjectival) may be used; e.g., *Does he want anything?* *ecquīd vult?*

169. *Ālīquīs* (no special feminine form in the nominative singular), *ālīquīd* (adjectival *ālīquī*, *-quā*, *-quōd*) is used to denote *some one*, *some*, as opposed to *no one*, *none*. E.g.,

*If some one does come,*  
*sī vēnīt ālīquīs.*

\*NOTE 1.—The use of *ālīquīs* with the future-perfect is noticeable; e.g., *Some one may say*, *dixerīt ālīquīs*; see § 205.

NOTE 2.—*Ālīquīs* is often constructed in the neuter with a dependent genitive, according to § 141, NOTE 3; e.g., *Some elegance*, *ālīquīd lēpōrīs*.

**170. Quīdam** (*a certain one*, or merely *a*) is either an adjective or a pronoun in the masculine and feminine. In the neuter it has distinctive forms : **quiddam** is pronominal, **quoddam** adjectival.

**Quīvīs** and **quīlibēt** (*any one you like*) similarly have two forms in the neuter. The English *any* and *any one*, when they apply to each individual in turn in a class of persons or things, must be rendered by one or other of these two words. *E.g.*,

*A certain man said, or A (certain) philosopher said,*  
**dixit quīdam, or dixit philōsōphūs quīdam.**

*Follow any one you please, provided you follow some one,*  
**quemlibēt sēquēre, mōdō āliquem.**

*He determined anyhow to finish what he had begun,*  
**stātuit quōvis mōdō inceptum perficere.**

*Obs.*—The above applies only to *any* and *any one* as used in positive sentences. For the rendering of these words in negative sentences, see §§ 171, 172.

**171. Quisquam** (*any one*) is used as a pronoun, but only with a negative or in expressions implying negation, or after comparatives. *E.g.*,

*And no one saw it,*  
**nēc quisquam illūd vīdit.**

*Scarcely any one survived,*  
**vix quisquam sup̄erērāt.**

*He was braver than any of the rest,*  
**fortiōr ērāt quam cētērōrum quisquam.**

*Obs.*—**Quisquam** is used also in questions which are in effect negations; e.g., *Did any one ever hear of this?* (= No one ever heard of this), **hōc quisquam audīvīt?**

**172. Ullūs** (*any*) is an adjective, and is generally used in the same kind of sentences as **quisquam**.

*NOTE.*—*Some, a few* = **nōn nullī**; *absolutely every one* = **nullūs nōn**. *So sometimes* = **nōn numquam**, *always* = **numquam nōn**; *in some places* = **nōn nusquam**, *everywhere* = **nusquam nōn**.

173. The rendering of the English words **some** and **any** into Latin is exceedingly perplexing, owing to the variety of meanings conveyed by them. The following are typical examples :—

*Some are foolish, others wise, ālīi stultī, sǎpientēs sunt ālīi.*

*Some (i.e. one party) are glad, others (i.e., another party) are sad; some (i.e., not a few others) feel neither sorrow nor delight, hī gaudent, illī dōlent; nonnullī nec dōlōrem nec gaudium sentiunt.*

*Bring me some (-thing of) hope, affēr mīhi ālīquīd sōlātīi.*

*Some (i.e., certain) Greeks from Athens are here, adsunt Graecī quīdam ex Āthēnīs.*

*I have (some) friends whom I ought to see, āmicōs hābēō quōs visērē dēbēō.*

*It is somebody's business to go (§ 229), nesciō cūiūs est irē.*

*Any one can do this, haec quilibēt facērē pōtest.*

*Scarcely any hope remains, vix ullā spēs restāt.*

*This is pleasing to scarcely a single man, vix ūnī quīdem est hōc grātum.*

*There is not any one (no one) here, nēmō ādest.*

*Do you want anything? numquīd (or ecquīd) vīs?*

*Does any one believe this fellow? numquīs (or ecquīs) huīc crēdit?*

*I will not do this for anything, hōc nullō prētīō faciām.*

*Any knowledge is better than not to know anything at all, mēliūs est quīlibēt sǎpientīae quam nīl sǎpērē.*

174. In addition to *both together*, *ambo*, and *two*, *dūō*, the following refer either to **two** objects or to **one** of **two** :—*the one . . . the other* or *the second* (of two), *altēr*; *neither*, *neutēr*; *which of the two?* *ūtēr?* *each* (of the two), *ūterquē*; *the one or the other*, *one of the two*, *altērūtēr*; *which of the two you please*, *ūtervīs*, *ūterlibēt*; *whichever of the two*, *ūtercumquē*.

\*NOTE 1.—*Each*, of any larger number, is *quisquē*, *quaequē*, *quodquē* (with the form *quidquē* pronominal only), which is constructed usually in the singular even when in sense belonging to a plural noun; e.g., *The soldiers began to desire each his own safety, milītēs sūam quisquē sālūtem cūpiēbant*. When there is no noun expressed, *ūnusquisquē* must be used; e.g., *Every man of us understands this, ūnusquisquē nostrum hōc intellēgit*. In this example, *nōs omnēs hōc intellēgimūs* would be equally correct, but less emphatic.

\*NOTE 2.—When **quisquē** is combined with the reflexive possessive **sūus**, the invariable order is **sūa quisquē**, **sūos quisquē**, etc. ; e.g., *It is his own sin that harasses a man*, **sūa quemquē fraus vexāt**. Similarly after a superlative (§ 176).

175. These words are all adjectives, and therefore depend for their case, etc., upon the substantive to which they belong. The *of* which is used to translate them into English must not be interpreted as a genitive sign. *E.g.*,

*I know neither of the (two) daughters,*  
**neutram filiām nōvī.**

*One of the (two) consuls fled, the other stood his ground,*  
**fūgīt altēr consūl, altēr restitīt.**

\*NOTE 1.—But when joined to pronouns the words **neutēr**, **ūterquē**, **ūtēr**, and **altēr** become pronouns, and require the partitive genitive ; e.g., *Each of us*, **ūterquē nostrum**.

\*NOTE 2.—In the plural **ūterquē** and similar words commonly refer to two parties, sets, or classes ; e.g., *Both sides took cruel advantage of their victory*, **ūtriquē victōriām crūdēlītēr exercēbant**.

176. Joined with a superlative, **quisquē** in the singular is equivalent to **all** (plural), the whole number being treated less as a collective body than as a number of units. *E.g.*,

*With us at least all the best men agree,*  
**nōbīs quīdem optīmūs quisquē assentitūr.**

177. Such superlative phrases as “as great as possible,” “as good as possible,” and the corresponding adverbials, “as greatly (well) as possible,” are expressed in Latin by prefixing **quam** to the adjective or adverb in the superlative. *E.g.*,

*He is collecting as large forces as possible,*  
**quam maximās compārāt cōpiās.**

*He will be here as speedily as possible,*  
**quam cēlerrimē ādērit.**

NOTE 1.—In all these cases there is an ellipsis of the verb **possum** with an infinitive ; the former is often expressed. *E.g.*, *He managed*  
*Lat. Comp.*



*the matter as well as possible, quam optīmē pōtērāt rem administrābāt* (understand administrārē with pōtērāt).

\*NOTE 2.—Similarly, *quam quī* (*quae, quōd, etc.*) joined with a superlative express the highest possible degree; e.g., *I am as true a friend to my country as any man, tam sum amīcūs rēi publicae quam quī maximē* (lit. *as he who is most*).

178. The comparative is frequently used to express that a certain quality is present to an excessive or considerable degree. In such cases there is no expressed *quam*-clause, the object of the comparison being understood. *E.g.,*

*That speech of yours is too prolix,*  
ūbērīor est istā orātīō.

*Old age is by nature rather talkative,*  
lōquacīor est nātūrā sēnectūs.

\*NOTE.—*Quam prō, quam ād,* may occasionally express lack of due proportion; e.g., *Men pay him more honour than he deserves, illum plūs quam prō dignitātē cōlunt.* Similarly *quam ūt* and *quam quī,* with the subjunctive; e.g., *The statues are too stiff to be accurate representations, signā rigīdiorā sunt quam ūt imitentūr vērītatem.*

179. *Māgīs* signifies excess of a quality; *plūs* excess in quantity. Both may stand with verbs, but the latter cannot qualify adjectives or adverbs as *māgīs* does. *E.g.,*

*The wise man seems rather enduring than fortunate, and attains more praise than happiness,*

sāpiens māgīs fortīs essē quam fortunātūs vīdētūr, ēt plūs laudīs quam fēlicitātīs consēquitūr.

\*NOTE.—*Pōtīūs* (= *rather*) is used with verbs or adjectives to qualify another statement; e.g., *He is lucky, or rather, clever, fortunātūs est vėl pōtīūs callīdūs; His speech prevails rather than convinces, vincīt orātīō pōtīūs quam convincīt.*

180. The excess of one quality over another may be denoted by *māgīs . . . quam* (as above) or by two comparatives. *E.g.,*

*The triumph was more brilliant than popular,*  
trīumphūs clārīor quam grātīor fūit.



## CHAPTER IX.—NUMERALS; THE CALENDAR; MONEY.

**181. Cardinal numerals** answer the question *How many?* (*Quōt?*). All but *mīliā* (*thousands*) are adjectives, and all are indeclinable with the exception of *ūnūs*; *dūō*; *trēs*; the hundreds from 200 to 900; and *mīliā*. *E.g.*,

*How many are the enemy? Twenty; at least I saw only twenty,*  
*quōt sunt hostēs? Vīgintī: ēquidem vīgintī tantum vīdī.*

*Obs.*—In this example *vīgintī* is nominative in the first instance, accusative in the second.

**NOTE 1.**—*Ūnūs* may be used in the plural with nouns which have no singular form in the same sense: *e.g.*, *One camp, ūnā castrā; A single letter (i.e., epistle), ūnae littērae.* Also when meaning simply *only* or *alone* it has a plural; *e.g.*, *The Volscians alone continued loyal, ūnī Volsci in fidē mansērunt.*

**\*NOTE 2.**—The plural is also found in the phrase *ūnī ēt altērī*, *one or two groups or parties.* (See § 175, NOTE 2.)

**182. Millē**, in the singular, is an adjective and indeclinable; *mīliā*, plural, is a substantive, and is fully declined. *E.g.*,

*A thousand men,*  
*millē hōmīnēs.*

*Four thousand men,*  
*quattuōr mīliā hōmīnum.*

**NOTE 1.**—When *mīliā* is compounded with other numerals, the substantive is genitive only if it precedes or immediately follows *mīliā*. *E.g.*, *3,500 infantry were slain, pēditum (or pēditēs) triā mīliā quingentī interfectī sunt, or triā mīliā pēditum ēt quingentī interfectī sunt, or triā mīliā quingentī pēditēs interfectī sunt.*

**\*NOTE 2.**—*Millē* is occasionally found used as a noun. *E.g.*, *He pitches his camp a mile from Fidenae* (lit., *at a thousand of paces*), *castrā ā Fidēnīs millē passūm pōnīt*; but this construction is not to be imitated.

**183. In compound numbers** between 20 and 100, the larger number usually precedes the smaller without *ēt*; and similarly in those from 101 upwards, except that *ēt*

may be inserted if there are only two numbers. In numbers between 20 and 100, the smaller with *et* may precede the larger. *E.g.*,

25 = *vīgintī quinquē* or *quinquē et vīgintī*.  
105 = *centum quinquē* or *centum et quinquē*.

*Obs.*—In compound numbers, *ūnūs* agrees with the noun in gender and case, but remains singular. *E.g.*, *He sold 21 cows, ūnam et vīgintī vaccās vendidit.*

NOTE 1.—To express 1,000,000 and upwards, it is usual to employ the numeral adverbs. *E.g.*, *Vicīēs centum* (or *centēnā*) *mīliā* = 100,000  $\times$  20 = 2,000,000; *dēcīēs centum* (or *centēnā*) *mīliā quadrāgintā triā mīliā trīgintā sex* = 1,043,036.

*Obs.*—After *dēcīēs*, *centum* (or *centēnā*) *mīliā* is often omitted, so that *dēcīēs* stands for 1,000,000.

NOTE 2.—For numerals in expressions of comparison, see § 132, NOTES 3, 4.

184. Ordinal numerals answer the question, *Which in order?* (*Quōtus?*) They are all adjectives. *E.g.*,

*What time is it? The tenth hour.*  
*quōtā est hōrā? Dēcīmā.*

NOTE.—*Priōr* and *altēr* are properly used of the first and second of two only; *primūs* and *secundūs* of the first and second of a larger number. (Note that *secundūs* also means *favourable*, and that *secundum* is a preposition meaning *next after* or *according to*.)

185. Compound ordinal numbers follow the rule of cardinals (§ 183). *E.g.*,

*In the year 1892,*  
*annō millēsīmō octingentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō altērō.*

186. The distributive numerals answer the question, *How many each?* (*Quōtēnī?*) They are all adjectives, and in prose are used in the plural only. *E.g.*,

*He gave a denarius apiece to each,*  
*singulōs singulis dēnārīōs dēdit.*

*Ten centurions are flogging each company of sixty men,*  
*dēnī centūrīōnēs sexāgēnōs verbērant.*

*Each centurion is flogging six soldiers,*  
*sēnōs milītēs centūrīōnēs verbērant.*

\*NOTE 1.—Distributive numerals are used only when stress is laid upon the identity of number or amount in the case of each person concerned. Otherwise *quisquē*, *ūnusquisquē*, *ūterquē* (see §§ 174, 175) must be used. *E.g.*, *Iūvenēs singulī singulōs interfēcērunt hostēs*, means that *Every one of the youths slew one of the enemy*; but *Interfēcīt iūvenīs quisquē hostēs*, means simply that *Each youth took part in killing the enemies*, without asserting how many each killed.

*Obs.*—Here may be added the use of the double *āliūs* to express indefinite reciprocity. *E.g.*, *One man terrified one, another another, āliūs ālium terrēbāt*; *They run away, one to one place, another to another, āliūs āliō* (adv.) *discurrunt*, i.e., *each runs in a different direction*.

187. With substantives which have no singular, or which have no singular in the same sense as that of the plural, the distributive numerals must be used in place of the cardinal. *E.g.*,

*Two camps,*  
*bīnā castrā* (not *dūō*).

NOTE 1.—But the cardinal is used in the case of *ūnūs* (see § 181, NOTE 1). In this usage the form *trīnī* (not *ternī*) is employed.

\*NOTE 2.—The poets extend this use of the distributives to other words, but particularly in reference to things taken in *pairs* or *sets*. *E.g.*, *Brandishing in his hand a pair of spears, bīnā mānū crispans hastiliā*.

*Obs.*—*One letter, ūnae littērae, or ūnā ēpistolā.*

*Two letters, bīnae littērae, or dūae ēpistolae.*

*Three letters, trīnac littērae, or trēs ēpistolae.*

188. The numeral adverbs answer the question, *How many times?* (*Quōtīēs?*) With the exception of *sēmēl*, *bīs*, *tēr*, and *quātēr*, all end in *-iēs* (*-iens*). *E.g.*,

*And I said it not twice only, but twenty times,*  
*quōd nōn bīs tantum sēd vicīēs dixī.*

\*NOTE.—In expressions of multiplication these adverbs require to be joined with the distributive numerals. *E.g.*, *Three times five are fifteen, tēr quīnā quīndēcim sunt*.

\**Obs.*—*Sescentī, sescentīēs, millē, millēs*, are used to signify any indefinitely great number, as in English *a thousand*. *E.g.*, *I said it a thousand times, or ever so many times, or again and again, sescentīēs hōc dixī.*

## THE CALENDAR.

189. The Roman month had three chief days, and the remaining days were expressed by counting forward to the chief day next following.

The three chief days were the Kalends (*Kālendae*), the Nones (*Nōnae*), and the Ides (*Idūs*).

The **Kalends** were the 1st day of the month.

The **Nones** and **Ides** were respectively the 5th and 13th days, except in the case of **March, May, July, and October**, when they fell upon the 7th and 15th days respectively.

The months were denoted by *adjectives*: *Iānūāriūs*, *Fēbrūāriūs*, *Martīūs*, *Aprīlis*, *Māiūs*, *Iūniūs*, *Quintīlis* (or *Quinctīlis*), *Sextīlis*, *Septēmbēr*, *Octōbēr*, *Nōvembēr*, *Dēcembēr*.

*Obs.*—Of the above adjectives denoting the months, those ending in -ūs are declined like *bōnūs*, those in -ēr like *ācēr*, those in -īs like *tristīs*.

The ablative of *Kālendae*, *Nōnae*, and *Idūs* is used to denote time when (§ 125); and the day next preceding a chief day is expressed by *prīdīe* with the accusative. *E.g.*,

*On the 1st of May,*  
*Kālendis Māiīs.*

*The 30th of April,*  
*prīdīe Kālendās Māiās.*

*On the 15th of October,*  
*Idībūs Octōbrībūs.*

*The 4th of December,*  
*prīdīe Nōnās Dēcembrēs.*

NOTE 1.—The expressions *prīdīe Nōnās*, *prīdīe Idūs*, etc., are treated as indeclinable substantives, and may stand for any case. *E.g.*, *Now was come the 30th of June* (nominative), *iam ādērāt prīdīe Kālendās Quintīlēs*.

190. To ascertain the Latin for any other day of the month:—(A) For any day between Kalends and Nones or between Nones and Ides, subtract the number of the English date from that of the Nones or Ides increased by one. (B) For any day between the Ides and the Kalends next following, subtract the number of the English date

from the whole number of days in that month increased by two. Render the number thus obtained by an ordinal numeral in agreement with *dĭem* in the formula *antĕ dĭem* (abbreviated *a.d.*) . . . , and add the name of the following chief day in the accusative case. *E.g.*,

*October 3*: (date of Nones + 1 - 3 = 5) *antĕ dĭem quintum Nōnās Octōbrēs*.

*August 9*: (date of Ides + 1 - 9 = 5) *antĕ dĭem quintum Īdūs Sextilēs*.

*May 25*: (number of days in May + 2 - 25 = 8) *antĕ dĭem octāvum Kālendās Īūniās*.

\*NOTE 1.—In the phrase *antĕ dĭem*, etc., *antĕ* really belongs to the word *Nōnās*, *Īdūs*, or *Kālendās*, and not to *dĭem*. The phrase may originally have been, e.g., *antĕ (diē tertĭō or dĭem tertĭum) Kālendās Īānŭāriās*, i.e., *before (on the third day or during the third day) the Kalends of January*.

NOTE 2.—The formula *antĕ dĭem*, etc., is treated as an indeclinable substantive, and may stand with prepositions, etc., in any case. *E.g.*, *I was staying at Rome from the 3rd to the 22nd of January*, *ex antĕ dĭem tertĭum Nōnās Īānŭāriās ād a.d. undĕcĭmum Kālendās Febrŭāriās Rōmæ mănĕbam*.

\*NOTE 3.—The date of an appointment or arrangement in the future is expressed by the preposition *in*. *E.g.*, *I have asked Caesar to dinner on the 28th of November*, *Pompeius on the 4th of December*, *Caesārem in a.d. quartum Kāl. Dĕc. ād cĕnam invitāvi*, *Pompĕium in prĭdiē Nōn*. Cp. § 151.

\*NOTE 4.—*The day before yesterday*, *hōc tertĭō diē*, *ābhinc bĭdŭum*, or *nŭdiŭs tertĭŭs*; *yesterday*, *hĕrĭ*, *hesternō diē*; *to-day*, *hōdiē*; *to-morrow*, *crās*, *crastinō diē*; *the day after to-morrow*, *pĕrendiē*. *Three days hence, in three days' time*, *quartō diē*; *on the day before (after) that day*, *prĭdiē (postrĭdiē) ēiŭs diēi*. *A space of two, three, four days*, *bĭdŭum*, *trĭdŭum*, *quadrĭdŭum*. *A space of two, three, four years*, *biennĭum*, *triennĭum*, *quadrĭennĭum*. *A space of five years*, *quinquennĭum*, *lustrum*.

## MONEY.

191. The unit used in reckoning sums of money was the *nummŭs* or *sestertĭŭs*, or (in full) *sestertĭŭs nummŭs* (=  $\frac{1}{4}$  *dĕnāriŭs*, and originally equivalent to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *assēs*). The intrinsic value of a *dĕnāriŭs* may be reckoned as a little

over 8d., that of a sestertius about 2d. Hence 1000 sestertii = £8 10s. In expressing thousands of sestertii (up to 1,000,000) the word *miliā* was omitted and *sestertium*, the genitive plural of *sestertius*, was converted into a neuter plural substantive; the number of thousands was denoted by a distributive numeral. *E.g.*,

*He bought this for 20 sesterces,*  
*vīgintī sestertiis hōc ēmit.*

*He bought this for 20,000 sesterces,*  
*vīcēnis sestertiis hōc ēmit.*

NOTE.—For quantities of 1,000,000 and upwards, observe: *dēcīs centum* (or *centēnā*) *miliā sestertium* = *ten times* 100,000 sestertii = 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centum* (*centēnā*) *miliā* are commonly omitted (§ 183, NOTE 1), so that a numeral adverb joined with *sestertium* = 100,000 sesterces multiplied by the number of the adverb. *E.g.*, *vīciēs sestertium* = 2,000,000 sesterces; *centiēs quadrāgiēs tēr sestertium* (= 100,000 × 143) = 14,300,000 sesterces. In this use *sestertium* can be declined as a singular substantive. *E.g.*, *He bought a country house for 1,500,000 sesterces, sestertiō quindēcīēs villam ēmit.*

192. The *ās* and its fractions (*unciā*,  $\frac{1}{12}$ ; *sextans*,  $\frac{1}{6}$ ; *quadrans*,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ; *triens*,  $\frac{1}{3}$ ; *quincunx*,  $\frac{5}{12}$ ; *sēmīs*,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ; *septunx*,  $\frac{7}{12}$ ; *bēs*,  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; *dōdrans*,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ; *dextans*,  $\frac{5}{6}$ ; *dēunx*,  $\frac{11}{12}$ ) were used in the expression of portions in inheritances, partnerships, and other money matters involving division. *E.g.*,

*Being left heir to the whole property he sold two-thirds of the farm,*  
*hērēs ex assē factūs dūās partēs fundī vendidit.*

*Caesar, I think, is heir to one-twelfth of the property,*  
*Caesar, ōpīnōr, hērēs est ex unciā.*

193. Interest (*ūsūrae* or *fēnūs*) was reckoned by the month at so many hundredth parts (*centēsīmae*, *sc.* *partēs*) of the capital (*sors*), thus :

12 per cent. per annum = 1 per cent. per mensem = *ūsūrae centēsīmae*.

24 per cent. per annum = 2 per cent. per mensem = *ūsūrae bīnae centēsīmae*.

Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the *ās* in apposition to *ūsūrae*, the rate of 1 per cent. per mensem being taken as the standard. *E.g.*,

3 per cent. per annum =  $\frac{1}{4}$  per cent. per mensem = *ūsūrae quadrantēs*.

6 per cent. per annum =  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. per mensem = *ūsūrae sēmissēs*.

*I am obliged to borrow at 5 per cent,*  
*ūsūris quincuncibūs mūtūārī cōgōr.*

---

## CHAPTER X.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

194. The indicative mood states a thing as a fact, past, present, or future. It is the mood also of most direct questions, and of most exclamations. *E.g.*,

*The moon moves round the earth,*  
*lūnā circā tellūrem mōvētūr.*

*Surely the earth does not move round the moon, does it?*  
*num terrā circā lūnam mōvētūr?*

*What a man he was!*  
*quālis vir ērāt!*

NOTE.—The functions of the indicative may be discharged by the infinitive (historic infinitive, § 103) in rapid narrative; and it is always replaced by the infinitive or subjunctive in dependent statements (§§ 304, 308).

195. The present tense of the Latin verb does duty for the English forms “I love,” “I run,” etc., and also for the forms “I am loving,” “I am running,” etc. *E.g.*,

*Labour overcomes all things,*  
*lābōr omniā vincit.*

*He is just starting,*  
*iam nunc prōficiēscitūr.*



196. The imperfect tense implies action incomplete in past time. It is used to express customary or repeated action, as well as action which endured for some time. *E.g.*,

*He was just then starting* (incomplete action in past time),  
iam tum prōficiscēbātūr.

*Cato was in the habit of saying, used to say, would say* (customary action),  
dicēbāt Cātō.

*The senate shouted again and again* (repeated action),  
clāmābāt sēnātūs.

*He was living* (for some time) *at Athens* (continuous action),  
vivēbāt thēnīs.

NOTE 1.—This tense may often be rendered “began to,” “proceeded to,” “intended to,” “attempted to,” “was for doing,” etc. *E.g.*, *The army commenced to climb the hills*, in collēs escendēbāt agmēn; *The consuls tried to allay the tumult, but in doing so occasionally rendered it worse*, consulēs sēdābant tūmultum, sēdandō interdum mōvēbant; *One of the two parties was for staving off the war, altērā pars arcēbāt bellum*.

\*NOTE 2.—In writing a letter, a Roman often regarded events from the point of view of the person who was to read it. Hence, in place of the present, he often used the imperfect. *E.g.*, instead of writing, *I date these lines from Baiæ for you* (haec tibi Baiīs dō), he wrote, *I was dating* (haec tibi Baiīs dābam); because, by the time the letter was opened and read, the action would have become a thing of the past. This is known as the “epistolary imperfect,” and is used only of events which, though present in time, are not likely to be lasting, or are not permanently true. Thus, *Great is the power of goodness* (magnā est vis virtūtis), being permanently true, would remain unchanged even in epistolary writing. The epistolary imperfect is found chiefly at the beginning and end of letters. Cp. § 198, NOTE.

197. The Latin perfect has two distinct uses: (a) aoristic or historical (e.g., āmāvī, *I loved* or *I did love*), (b) present-perfect or perfect (e.g., āmāvī, *I have loved* or *I have been loving*). *E.g.*,

*Cato said* (on a particular occasion),  
dixīt Cātō.

*Is this what you used to say? I did say it (once)*,  
num hōc tū dicēbās? dixī.

*I have lived* (my life),  
vixī.



NOTE.—The distinction between the perfect and imperfect tenses must be carefully maintained in translating English into Latin, although in English it is very often lost, owing to the fact that both tenses are represented by the English past. It is easy to decide which tense is to be used in Latin, if it is remembered that the imperfect denotes a continuous action, the perfect an action without reference to its duration; e.g., *The king determined to kill the general, for he saw how powerful he was with all orders*, *dūcem occidēre constitūt rex, vidēbāt enim quam esset apud omnēs ordinēs pōtens*. Here *constitūt* expresses momentary determination, *vidēbāt* a continuous action.

198. The pluperfect expresses action which was already completed at some point in the past referred to. *E.g.*,

*The liberators had already murdered Caesar when Octavius returned from Epirus,*

*iam Caesārem libērātōrēs occidērant cum Octāviānus ex Ēpirō rediit.*

\*NOTE.—In epistolary writing the pluperfect may take the place of the perfect under the same restrictions as those mentioned with regard to the corresponding use of the imperfect (§ 196, NOTE 2). *E.g.*,

*Quintus has come back and is tired after his journey,*  
*redierāt Quintus; ex itinere languēbāt.*

199. The words *iam*, *iamdiū*, *iampridem*, *iamdūdum* regularly take a present in Latin where English uses the present-perfect (of an action which has already been going on some time), an imperfect where English uses the pluperfect (of an action which at the time referred to had been going on some time). *E.g.*,

*You have been attending Cratippus' lectures for a year,*  
*annum iam audis Cratippum.*

*I have for a long time seen (and still see),*  
*iamdiū vidēō.*

*For years the Romans had been disgusted with the insolence of the Claudii,*  
*iampridem superbiam Claudiorum aegrē ferebant Rōmānī.*

*I had been deliberately opposing you for a long time,*  
*iamdūdum tibi nōn imprudens adversābār.*

NOTE.—A similar idiom exists in French, e.g., *Je désire depuis longtemps*, "I have long been desirous."

**200.** *Dum* (*while*, i.e., *in the time that*) regularly takes the present indicative in place of the (English) imperfect, etc. *E.g.*,

*While the Romans were wasting time, Saguntum was already being besieged,*

*dum Rōmānī tēpūs tērunt, Sāguntum obsīdēbātūr.*

*I saw it while waiting,*

*dum mănēō, vīdī.*

NOTE.—This rule does not hold good when *dum* means *while* in the sense of *during the whole time that*.

\*Obs.—This usage is so constant that it is found even in dependent statements (§ 309, NOTE 3).

**201.** In historical writing or vivid narration the present tense (*historic present*) is freely used in place of the past. *E.g.*,

*Romulus led out his army; the Sabines were routed, and fled,*  
*Rōmūlūs exercītum ēdūcīt, Sābinī funduntūr fūgiuntquē.*

**202.** The temporal conjunctions *antēquam*, *prīusquam*, *postquam*, *ūt*, *ūbi*, take the perfect tense in Latin where in English the pluperfect is used. *E.g.*,

*And after he had said this, he at once departed,*  
*quōd postquam dixīt, confestim discessīt.*

*The Romans arrived before the enemy had broken up their camp,*  
*Rōmānī antē vēnērunt quam hostēs castrā mōvērunt.*

*When he had given this reply he went away,*  
*haec ūbi respondīt, ābīīt.*

\*NOTE.—With the imperfect (rare) these particles denote an action or state still continuing. *E.g.*, *After the armies had been drawn up and were standing, postquam stābant exstructī exercītūs.*

**203.** The future simple refers to what is future (*a*) in comparison with the present, or (*b*) in comparison with some time in the nearer future. *E.g.*,

*I shall go away,*  
*ābībō.*

*We shall leave Rome in three days' time (from now),*  
*quartō diē Rōmā excēdēmūs.*

*I will believe it when Marcus himself has come back,*  
*cum Marcūs ipsē rēdiērīt, crēdam.*

\* NOTE.—The 2nd person singular of the future simple is sometimes used colloquially in an imperative sense. E.g., *You will please report this to Pompeius*, *haec Pompēiō nuntiābīs*.

204. Such “time in the nearer future” is expressed by the **future-perfect**, which refers to any action regarded as completed between the present and a given future date. *E.g.*,

*If he comes, the issue will be as prosperous as possible,*  
*sī vēnerīt, rēs quam optīmē ēvādēt.*

NOTE 1.—Observe that in English we use the simple present or perfect, rarely or never the true future-perfect (“shall have come”).

NOTE 2.—N.B. The future-perfect is used in the “if” and the “when” clause in most conditional (§ 250) and temporal (§ 288) clauses which refer to future time. Similarly in relative clauses which depend upon a principal verb in the future, Latin employs the future-perfect in place of the English present; e.g., *Anyone who does this will be punished*, *quī haec fēcērīt, poenās dābīt*. In all these cases, however, the simple future is used, if the action in the dependent clause is contemporaneous with (not prior to) that in the principal sentence; e.g., *Anyone who says this, will be wrong*, *quī haec dicēt, errābīt*.

205. An idiomatic use of the future-perfect occurs in quoting an objection. *E.g.*,

*But, some one may say, he is a good man,*  
*āt vīr bōnūs est, dixērīt quispiam.*

*Obs.*—The tense here used is considered by many authorities to be the perfect subjunctive used in a potential sense (see § 210).

---

## CHAPTER XI.—THE PURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**206.** The **subjunctive** makes a statement not as that of an objective fact, but as of something conceived in the mind—a possibility, condition, purpose, result, thought, etc.

**EXAMPLES.**—(i.) *I waited until he came, dōnēc adfūit mănēbam* (implying that he did come); *I waited until he should come, dum vēnirēt mănēbam* (his coming being represented as present in the speaker's mind as the purpose of the waiting (dum = ūt intērēā) but not as necessarily occurring in actual fact).

(ii.) *If it is so, I am glad, sī itā fīt, gaudēō*; *If it should be (were) so, I should be glad, sī itā fiāt (fiērēt), gaudēam (gaudērem).*

The subjunctive is used independently :

**207.** (A) In the 1st person (at times also in other persons) singular or plural in questions as to the course of action to be pursued (**deliberative subjunctive**). *E.g.,*

*Are we to go ?*  
ēāmūs ?

*What was I to do ?*  
quid faciērem ?

**NOTE.**—**-nē** and **ān** are frequently used with this subjunctive; e.g., *Am I to fly ? or to stay ? fūgiāmnē ? ān mănēam ?*

**208.** (B) The present subjunctive expresses a **command** or **exhortation** in the first person plural, in the second person singular, and in the third person singular or plural. The negative is always **nē**. The perfect subjunctive with **nē** occasionally expresses a prohibition in the second person singular or plural. *E.g.,*

*One should escape by flight the harsh treatment of Fortune,*  
iniūriās fortūnae dēfūgiendō rēlinquās.

*Let the wicked not dare to try to appease the gods with gifts,*  
dōnīs impiī nē plācārē audēant dēōs.

*Obs.*—The 1st person plural of this subjunctive is sometimes called the **hortative** subjunctive; e.g., *Let us die in the midst of the battle, mēdīs mōriāmūr in armīs.*

**NOTE.**—The 2nd person of this subjunctive expresses a simple command. The present, whether negated or not, is used of a purely indefinite subject; e.g., *Do not lie, nē mentīārīs* (a general prohibition). The perfect when negated is used of a definite subject; e.g., *Do not lie, nē mentitūs sīs* (a particular prohibition, addressed to a particular person on a particular occasion). The perfect, however, is seldom used except in colloquial style, the usual method being by *nōlī* with the infinitive. See §§ 218-220.

*Obs.*—Occasionally the optative subjunctive appears as a simple exclamation, particularly in the phrase, *So love me heaven! itā mē dī āment!* E.g., *So love me heaven, I am afraid of something, itā mē dī āment, nōn nihīl tīmēō.*

For the subjunctive in concessions, see § 260, **NOTE**.

**209. (C)** With or without *ūtīnam* or *ūtīnam nē* (rarely *nōn*), the present subjunctive expresses a wish still attainable; the imperfect expresses an unattainable wish with regard to the present; the pluperfect expresses a wish (necessarily unattainable) with regard to the past. This is termed the **optative** subjunctive. *E.g.,*

*O that it may be the resting-place of my old age!*  
*sīt mēae sēdēs ūtīnam sēnectae!*

*O that it were lawful not to grant what has been promised!*  
*ūtīnam prōmissā licērēt nōn dārē!*

*O that this were not true that I am writing!*  
*illūd ūtīnam nē vērū scribērem!*

*O that I had been less greedy of life!*  
*ūtīnam mīnūs vītāe cūpīdī fūissēmūs!*

**\*NOTE.**—When *itā* or *sic* is joined to this subjunctive, it is commonly followed by an explanatory clause introduced by *sī*, *ūt* (with indicative), or an imperative (sometimes an equivalent subjunctive). E.g., *May I come to grief, if I know! itā pērēam mālē, sī sciō!* *May I live as surely as I am making very heavy outlays, itā vīvam, ūt maximōs sumptūs faciō!* *Rise; so may your daughter be safe! sic sīt tibi filiā sospēs, surgē!* *Give me back Vergil; so may the goddess, queen of Cyprus, guide thee! sic tē divā pōtens Cypri rēgāt, reddās Vergīlium.*

210. (D) The subjunctive (usually in the 2nd person) frequently expresses the mere possibility of an event occurring (**potential subjunctive**, see § 257); *e.g.*, in such phrases as *You would scarcely have believed*, **vix crēdērēs**. It is frequent also in the 1st person, particularly of the perfect tense, to express a very gentle assertion. *E.g.*,

*I scarcely dare assert this,*  
**quōd vix affirmāvērīm.**

\*NOTE.—To this usage belong **vēlim**, **vellem**, introducing polite requests, etc. *E.g.*, *I should like you to ask*, **vēlim rōgēs**; *I could wish you had been here*, **vellem adfūissēs**.

211. Observe that the English words **may**, **might**, **could**, **should**, etc., do duty for the expression of possibility, as well as of permission, ability, or duty. In the former case they are the sign of the subjunctive mood in Latin, in the latter they are represented by the verbs **licēt**, **possum**, **oportēt**, etc.

EXAMPLES.—*You may not believe it* (possibility), **quōd forsītān nōn crēdīdēris**. *I may go* (permission), **licēt mīhi irē**. *He could have gone* (ability), **irē pōtērāt or pōtūit** (see § 252). *We should go*, *i.e.*, *we ought to go* (duty), **oportēt nōs irē, ēundum est nōbis** (§ 95).

---

## CHAPTER XII.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES AND THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**212.** A complex sentence is one in which the main statement is qualified by at least one other clause. The main statement is that of the principal verb; the qualifying clauses are subordinate or dependent. *E.g.,*

*He sent a messenger to explain the matter,*  
**nuntĭum mĭsĭt quĭ rem dĕmonstrĕrĕt.**

In this sentence **nuntĭum mĭsĭt** is the principal statement, and would be a grammatical sentence if stripped of the dependent clause **quĭ rem dĕmonstrĕrĕt**; while the latter, if taken apart from the principal statement, has no complete and intelligible sense.

*Obs.*—A complex sentence is not identical with a compound sentence. Compound sentences are those which contain two or more simple sentences (§ 3), each of which gives, when taken separately, a complete and intelligible meaning. Thus **vĕnĭ, vĭdĭ, vĭcĭ** contains three simple sentences in coordination and forms one compound sentence.

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**213.** The tense of a subordinate verb in the subjunctive mood depends upon that of the principal verb to which it is subordinate. According as the principal verb is primary or historic in tense, the dependent verb will be primary or historic.

(The primary tenses of the indicative are the present, perfect meaning *have*, future, and future-perfect; the

historic or secondary tenses are the imperfect, perfect meaning *did*, and pluperfect. Both tenses of the imperative are primary. In the subjunctive the present and perfect are primary, the imperfect and pluperfect are historic.)

NOTE.—It must be carefully remembered that *vīdī, rexi*, and all perfect indicative forms have to do duty in Latin for the English *I have ruled* (primary) and *I did rule* or *I ruled* (historic); and, according as the principal verb is in the primary or the historic perfect, the dependent verb will vary in tense. On the other hand, *vīderim, rexerim*, etc., are to be used in primary sequence only.

214. The following are examples of a principal verb in a **primary** tense of the indicative followed by a dependent verb in the present or perfect subjunctive:—

*I am asking who it is.....rōgō quīs sīt.*  
 „ „ *was.....rōgō quīs fūērīt.*  
*I have asked who it is.....rōgāvī quīs sīt.*  
 „ „ *was.....rōgāvī quīs fūērīt.*  
*I shall ask who it is.....rōgābō quīs sīt.*  
 „ „ *was.....rōgābō quīs fūērīt.*  
*I shall have asked who it is....rōgāvērō quīs sīt.*  
 „ „ „ *was...rōgāvērō quīs fūērīt.*

Similarly—

*He commands arms to be brought,*  
*impērāt ūt armā adfērantūr.*

*I have prevented him from going away,*  
*impēdīvī quōmīnūs ābēāt.*

NOTE.—The present subjunctive may bear an unemphasised future meaning; e.g., *I beg you to come* (i.e., *that you will come*), *rōgō ūt vēnīās*. But where any stress is laid upon the futurity of the event the periphrastic future subjunctive (which is supplied in the active by the future participle of the verb and the present or imperfect subjunctive of *essē*, and in the passive by *fūtūrum sīt* [*essēt*] *ūt* followed by the present or imperfect subjunctive of the verb) must be used; e.g., *I beg that you will do it* (at such and such a time), *rōgō ūt factūrūs sīs*.



215. In the following examples a principal verb in a historic tense is followed by a dependent verb in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive:—

*I was asking who was coming (or came) . . . rōgābam quī vērīrēt.*

„ „ *had come . . . . . rōgābam quīs vērīssēt.*

*I asked who was coming (or came) . . . . . rōgāvī quīs vērīrēt.*

„ *had come . . . . . rōgāvī quīs vērīssēt.*

*I had asked who was coming (or came) . . . rōgāveram quīs vērīrēt.*

„ „ *had come . . . . . rōgāveram quīs vērīssēt.*

Similarly—

*I asked who was intending to come,  
rōgāvī quīs ventūrūs essēt.*

*I asked who had been intending to come,  
rōgāvī quīs ventūrūs fūīssēt.*

*I was preventing him from escaping,  
impēdīēbam quōmīnūs fūgērēt.*

NOTE 1.—The historic present (§ 201) may take either primary or historic sequence.

NOTE 2.—Exceptions to the rule in § 213 occur, but the reason is generally obvious. Particularly in Livy, the perfect subjunctive is used in consecutive clauses in historic sequence of an event regarded merely as past, and not necessarily contemporaneous with the action of the main verb; e.g., *So much had (Rome's) strength increased, that not even at the death of Aeneas did the neighbours dare to rise in arms, tantum ōpēs crēverant ut nē mortē quīdem Aenēae mōvērē armā accōlāe ausī sint.* Again, in consecutive clauses, the present subjunctive must be used if the result belongs to present time only; e.g., *So great was the forethought of Lucullus that Asia stands firm to-day, in Lūcullō tantā prūdentiā fūit ut hōdīe stēt Asiā.*

---

## CHAPTER XIII.—COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

**216.** The **present imperative** conveys a simple order or request; the **future imperative** gives a more authoritative command. *E.g.*,

*Pack up your baggage and begone,*  
**colligē sarcinulās et exī.**

*You must be a good soldier,*  
**estō bonūs milēs.**

**NOTE 1.**—The future imperative is rarely used except in archaic formulae, and is usually joined with the simple future. *E.g.*, *If any one shall break or slay unwittingly, let it not be a crime*, **sī quis rumpēt occidetvē insciēns, nē fraus estō**; *So strike thou the people even as I shall strike this pig*, **sic tū pōpulum fēritō, ūt ēgō hunc porcū fēriām.**

**NOTE 2.**—The English word “must” is to be distinguished according as it implies a duty or an unavoidable necessity. *E.g.*, “they must die” may be rendered (1) **mōriuntōr**, or (2) **mōriēdum est illis**. The former is an order, the latter merely a statement of what is inevitable. For (1) might be used **oportēt, dēbent**; for (2) **nēcessē est, fiērī nōn pōtest quīn**, etc.

**217.** A command may be expressed by **cūrā ūt, fāc ūt** (with subjunctive), in place of the simple imperative. *E.g.*,

*Take care to be at Rome, Be sure to be at Rome,*  
**cūrā ūt Rōmae sis.**

*See that you give back the book speedily,*  
**fāc ūt librum citō reddās.**

**Obs.**—The subjunctive may be used, without **ūt**, in semi-dependence on the main verb (§ 243); e.g., *See that you get to know*, **fāc sciās.**

**\*NOTE 1.**—For other periphrases for the imperative, see the use of **vēlim, vellem** (§ 210, NOTE), and of the simple future (§ 203, NOTE).

**\*NOTE 2.**—By the rule of sequence of tenses, **fāc, cūrā, vēlim** must be followed by a present subjunctive; **vellem** by an imperfect or pluperfect.

For the subjunctive in commands (jussive subjunctive), see § 208, and NOTE.

218. A prohibition or negative command in the second person is expressed by the imperative of *nōlō* constructed with an infinitive. *E.g.*,

*Do not believe it,*  
*nōlī īd pūtāřě.*

*Do not become slaves,*  
*nōlītě servī fīřī.*

*Obs.*—The 2nd person of the perfect subjunctive with *nē* is occasionally used when a definite person or persons are addressed, but this construction should be avoided. If no definite person is addressed, the 2nd person singular of the present subjunctive with *nē* is commonly used. The present imperative with *nē* is used in poetry only, the future imperative with *nē* in legal language only. See § 208, NOTE.

219. In compound sentences containing two commands the negative of the second is *něvě* or (before consonants only) *neu*.

*Burn not nor bury a dead man in the city,*  
*hōmīnem mortūum īn urbě nē sěpělītō něvě ūřītō.*

220. A prohibition may also be expressed by the phrases *cāvě* (*cāvětě*), *cāvě nē* (*cāvětě nē*) followed by the subjunctive. *E.g.*,

*Beware of pardoning him, or Do not pardon him,*  
*cāvě ěī īgnoscās.*

*Beware of becoming slaves, or Do not become slaves,*  
*cāvětě nē servī fīātīs.*

NOTE.—By the rule of sequence of tenses, *cāvě*, *cāvě nē* (*cāvětě nē*), must all be followed by a present subjunctive.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.—QUESTIONS DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

**221.** The simplest form of the **direct question** is identical with that of the direct statement, the difference being marked by the note of interrogation in writing and by the tone of voice in speaking. *E.g.*,

*He has gone,*  
ivīt.

*Has he gone ?*  
ivīt ?

**222.** More commonly the question is marked by the use of an interrogative pronoun, adjective, adverb, or particle. *E.g.*,

*Who has come ?*  
quīs vēnīt ?

*Has he gone ?*  
ivitnē ?

*Which of the two peoples conquered ?*  
ūtēr pōpūlūs vīcīt ?

**223.** The interrogative particles are—(i.) **nonnē**, expecting the answer “Yes”; (ii.) **num**, expecting the answer “No”; (iii.) **-nē**, the answer to which is indifferent. *E.g.*,

*We must all die, must we not ?*  
**nonnē omnībūs mōriendum est ?**

*Surely we must not all die ?*  
**num omnībūs mōriendum est ?**

*Must we all die ?*  
**estnē omnībūs mōriendum ?**

*Obs. 1.*—The interrogative particle **-nē** is enclitic, i.e., it cannot stand alone, but is suffixed (like **-quē**) to the preceding word. It must be distinguished from the negative **nē**, and also from the affirmative particle **nē** or **nae** used with personal and demonstrative pronouns (e.g., *Assuredly, had you done so, you would have acted more advantageously for your reputation, nē tū, sī id fēcissēs, mēliūs fāmae tūae cōsulūissēs*).

*Obs. 2.*—The interrogative **-nē** is suffixed to the emphatic word in the question, and this word stands first in the sentence; e.g., *Is it Caesar who has defeated the Nervii ? Caesarnē Nervīōs vīcīt ? Is it the Nervii that Caesar has defeated ? Nervīōsnē vīcīt Caesār ? Have the Nervii suffered at the hands of Caesar a defeat ? vīcīt nē Nervīōs Caesār ?*

**224.** Interrogative adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs are—

*Who ? What ?* **quīs** (pronoun).

*Is there any one who . . . ? was there any one who . . .* **ecquīs, numquīs** (pronoun).

*Which ? What ?* **quī** (adjective).

*How ?* **quī** (adverb), **ūt** (with verbs), **quemadmodum**.

*How great ?* **quantūs** (adjective).

*Of what sort ?* **quālis** (adjective).

*Which of the two ?* **ūtēr** (adjective and pronoun).

*How many ?* **quōt** (indeclinable adjective and pronoun).

*What (in numerical order—first, second, third, etc.) ?* **quōtūs** (adjective).

*How many each ?* **quōtēnī**.

*How often ?* **quōtīēs**.

*Why ?* **cūr, quārē, quamobrem**.

*When ?* **quandō**.

*Where ?* **ūbi**.

*Whence ?* **undē**.

*Whither ?* **quō**.

*By what means ?* **quōmōdō**.

*Of what sort ?* **cūismōdī**.

*To what end ?* **quorsūs**.

*How long ?* **quamdiū**.

*How far ?* **quōusquē**.

*Why . . . not ?* **quīn** (with indicative).

*Obs. 1.*—*When ?* must be rendered by **quandō**? **Cum** can never be used as an interrogative.

*Obs. 2.*—**Numquīs**, like **num**, expects a negative reply. E.g., *Surely there is no one who does not know this ?* **numquīs hōc nescīt ?**

*NOTE.*—**Quīn** is used only in *direct* questions which imply a command or exhortation. E.g., *Why do we not go ?* (= *Let us go*) **quīn imūs ?**

For simple questions in the subjunctive (deliberative subjunctive), see § 207.

**225.** A double (or disjunctive) question is one which embraces two or more alternatives connected by the conjunction *or*. E.g., “Are you coming or not, or are you

undecided?" "Are you coming to us, or shall we come to you?"

The interrogative particles used to mark a double question are, in the first alternative, **utrum** or **-nē**, in the second and subsequent alternatives, **ān** (also **annōn**, **necnē**). *E.g.*,

*Are you coming hither, or are you in doubt what ought to be done?*  
**utrum hūc vēnīs, ān dūbītās quīd āgendum sīt?**

*Obs.*—The particle is very frequently omitted in the first alternative; e.g., *Is he bold or timid?* **fērox ān tīmīdūs est?**

NOTE 1.—**Ān** is frequently found introducing questions seemingly, but only seemingly, single, and implies a tone of wonder, remonstrance, or irony. *E.g.*, (*Don't you see I am cheerful,*) or *can it be that you think I am sad?* = *Surely you don't think I am sad?* **ān tū essē mē tristem pūtās?**

NOTE 2.—**Annōn**, **necnē** are used to introduce an alternative which is the reverse of that immediately preceding; **annōn** as a rule occurs in direct questions, **necnē** in indirect.

NOTE 3.—Observe the following ways of rendering the question, "Is this my affair or yours?"

- (i.) **utrum haec tūā ān mēā rēs est?**
- (ii.) **haec tūā ān mēā rēs est?**
- (iii.) **tūānē haec ān mēā rēs est?**

**226.** An indirect (or dependent) question is one which is grammatically subordinate to and introduced by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun, expressing any shade of question, inquiry, doubt, wonder, uncertainty, revelation, concealment, knowledge, or ignorance. *E.g.*, *He asked who it was; there was a discussion as to who it was; I wonder why he did it; he told me who did it.* These are indirect forms of the (direct) questions, *Who was it? Why did he do it? Who did it?*

**227.** In every indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive mood, and its tense is either present or perfect, as the sense requires, if the introductory verb is primary

(see § 213); and imperfect or pluperfect, as the sense requires, if the introductory verb is historic. The same pronouns, adjectives, adverbs (except *quīn*), and particles are used alike for direct and indirect questions, but *num* introducing an indirect question is often merely equivalent to *-nē*. (See also § 225, NOTE 2.) *E.g.*,

- (i.) *Which of the two consuls fell at Trasimenus?*  
*ūtēr consūl ād Trāsīmēnum cēcīdīt?*

*He is asking which of the two consuls fell at Trasimenus,*  
*rōgāt ūtēr consūl ād Trāsīmēnum cēcīdērīt.*

*He asked which of the two consuls had fallen at Trasimenus,*  
*rōgāvīt ūtēr consūl ād Trāsīmēnum cēcīdissēt.*

- (ii.) *Is it a true poem or no?*  
*iustum est pōēmā annōn?*

*There is a dispute whether it is a true poem or no,*  
*disceptātiō est utrum iustum sīt pōēmā necnē.*

*There was a dispute whether it was a true poem or no,*  
*disceptātiō ērāt utrum iustum essēt pōēmā necnē.*

- (iii.) *Who was saying it?*  
*quīs dīcēbāt?*

*There is a question as to who said (or was saying) it,*  
*quaerītūr quīs dixerīt.*

*There was a question as to who said (or was saying) it,*  
*quaerēbātūr quīs dicērēt.*

- (iv.) *How many gave their votes?*  
*quōt sententiām dixerunt?*

*It is uncertain how many gave their votes,*  
*incertum est quōt sententiām dixerint.*

*It was uncertain how many had given their votes,*  
*incertum ērāt quōt sententiām dixissent.*

228. There are in Latin no single equivalents for the English "yes" and "no." The answer to a direct question is therefore expressed (i.) by *ētīam*, *itā plānē* (= *yes*), *mīnimē*, *nēquāquam*, etc. (= *no*); (ii.) by the verbs *aiō*

(= *I say yes*), **nĕgō** (= *I say no*); (iii.) commonly by repeating the verb of the question. *E.g.*,

*Do you say that Crassus is unhappy? Yes.*  
tū mīserum essē Crassum dīcīs? Itā plānē.

*Surely we ought not to envy the dead? Yes.*  
num mortūis invidērē dēbēmūs? Aīō.

*Are these your feelings? No.*  
hōc tū sentīs? nōn sentiō.

NOTE 1.—**Nĕgō** is the usual equivalent for such phrases as “to say . . . not,” etc., and so takes the place of **dīcō**, etc., followed by a negative. *E.g.*, *He says he will not go away*, **nĕgāt sē ābitūrum** essē; *Philosophers say that our senses ought not to be relied on*, **nĕgant phīlōsōphī sensībūs crēdendum** essē.

NOTE 2.—Similarly, **nĕquē** (**nĕc**) must be used for **ēt . . . nōn**; and **nĕc quisquam**, **nĕquē ullūs . . .** = “and no one,” “and no . . .”

**229. Nesciō quīs** (**quae, quīd**) is often used as the equivalent of an indefinite pronoun in the sense of *some one*, and is then followed by the indicative if the form of the sentence would otherwise demand that mood. *E.g.*,

*Somebody said, So-and-so said,*  
**nesciō quīs dixit.**

But, *I don't know who said it,*  
**nesciō quīs hōc dixērīt** (indirect question).

**230. Nesciō ān, haud sciō ān, dūbitō ān** are used to imply that the statement which they introduce is believed rather than otherwise. They may be rendered in English by such phrases as, “I rather think that,” “I incline to believe that,” etc. *E.g.*,

*I fancy you believe me when I say yes,*  
**nesciō ān mīhi āientī crēdās.**

*I am inclined to think that it is impossible for any old age to be happier,*  
**haud sciō ān nullā sēnectūs bēatīōr** essē possīt.

*I should think he is persuaded of this,*  
**dūbitō ān hōc illī persuāsum** sīt.



\**Obs.*—In English sentences introduced by “I don’t know whether,” as in the Latin sentences quoted above, one only of two alternatives is expressed; but while the alternative expressed in the English, “I don’t know whether it is true,” is the first and improbable one, that expressed in the Latin, *nesciō an vĕrum sīt* (*I should think it is true*), is the second and probable one. *An* here, as always, introduces the *second* alternative of a double question.

**231.** *Forsītān* regularly takes the subjunctive, and so does *forsān*, each being equal to *fors sīt an*; but *fortassē* takes the indicative. *E.g.*,

*It may perhaps be a good thing,*  
*forsītān bōnum sīt.*

*You will perhaps say, What then?*  
*dicēs fortassē, Quīd ergō?*

NOTE.—In prose use only *forsītān* or *fortassē*.

## CHAPTER XV.—SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

**232.** According to § 5, the subject or object of a sentence may be expressed by an infinitive or a clause.

Dependent clauses standing as subject or object have their verb in either the indicative or the subjunctive mood.

**233.** The indicative in a subject or object clause is introduced by the conjunction *quōd*. It is most common in a subject clause, and is used only of that which is regarded as an actual fact. *E.g.*,

*(The fact) that you are troubled in health touches me deeply,*  
*pēnītūs mē tangīt quōd vālētūdīnē lābōrās.*

*(The fact) that Regulus went back again seems wonderful to us,*  
*quōd rēdiīt Rēgūlūs nōbīs mīrābilē vīdētūr,*

**234.** *Gaudēō, laetōr*, and similar personal verbs expressing emotion, may take an object clause in the indicative, or else the accusative and infinitive construction. *E.g.*,

*I am glad that you write,*  
*gaudēō quōd scribīs (or gaudēō tē scribēre).*

*I wonder one soothsayer does not smile when he has caught sight of another,*

*mīrōr quōd nōn rīdēt hāruspex cum hāruspicem vidērīt (or mīrōr hāruspicem nōn rīdēre, etc.).*

\*NOTE.—*Mīrōr* is also followed by *sī* and the indicative; *e.g.*, *I am surprised if these are your feelings, mīrōr sī hōc sentīs.*

**235.** The subjunctive in a subject or object clause is introduced by *ūt, nē, ūt nōn, quōmīnūs, or quīn.*

NOTE.—*Nē, nē quīs, nē quīd, nē ullūs, nē umquam, nē usquam*, etc., are used in negative clauses which express a purpose; *ūt nōn, ūt nēmō, ūt nīhīl, ūt nullūs, ūt numquam, ūt nusquam*, etc., in those which express result. *E.g.*, *He began to beg them not to go, ōrābāt nē irent.* (Here “not to go” is the object of *ōrābāt*, and it expresses the purpose with which he begged; hence the negative is *nē*.) *He secured the condemnation of the whole number, impetrāvīt ūt nēmīnī parcērētūr.* (Here “the condemnation of the whole number” is the object of *impetrāvīt*, and expresses not a purpose, but a result. Hence the negative is *ūt nōn*.) See also § 281.

On the construction of the subjunctive in object clauses with verbs of asking, advising, commanding, striving, persuading, wishing, and desiring, see §§ 106-108.

**236.** The subjunctive may stand (negatives, *nōn, nullūs*, etc.) in a subject clause with *accīdīt, contingīt, evēnīt, rēliquum est, restāt, sēquītūr*, all used impersonally. *E.g.*,

*It happened that the moon was at the full,*  
*accīdīt ūt lūnā essēt plēnā.*

*It follows that the universe is controlled by the power of the gods,*  
*sēquītūr ūt mundūs dēōrum nūmīnē administrētūr.*

NOTE.—*Accīdīt* may take the infinitive (see § 70). *Accēdīt* (*it is added*) takes either *ūt* and the subjunctive or *quōd* and the indicative (§ 233).

**237.** A subjunctive clause introduced by *ut* stands as subject with *tantum adest*. *E.g.*,

*So far is death from being an evil, that I fear, etc. . . .*  
*tantum adest ut malum mors sit, ut verear, etc. (lit., it is so far removed that death is an evil).*

*Obs.*—In this phrase *adest* is impersonal.

**238.** The subjunctive stands in object clauses (negatives, *non*, etc.) with verbs signifying to accomplish an action, such as *impetror* (*I obtain by asking*), *efficio*, *committō*, etc. *E.g.*,

*From the Sequani he obtains permission for the Helvetii to pass through their territories,*

*ā Sēquānīs impetrāt, ut p̄r finēs sūos irē Helvētīōs pātiantūr.*

*He contrived that no one should know,*  
*effecit ut nēmō scīrēt.*

NOTE 1.—But all such verbs take the simple object-accusative when necessary. *E.g.*, *He secured peace, pācem effecit*; *Let him be granted what he desires, eā, quae vult, impetrēt.*

NOTE 2.—When these verbs are used passively, the *ut* clause becomes of course the subject (§ 27).

NOTE 3.—*Persuādēō* is constructed with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive when it signifies “to prevail upon” a person to undertake a course of action, but with the accusative and infinitive when the meaning is “to convince” of the truth of a statement; *e.g.*, *He persuades him to cross over to the enemy, huic persuādēt ut ad hostēs transēat*; but, *For my part, I could never be convinced that the soul ceases to exist, mihi quidem persuādērī numquam pōtūit ānīmōs ēmōrī.*

**\*239.** The subjunctive stands idiomatically in comparative sentences, with or without *ut* (negatives, *non*, etc.), after *quam*, *pōtīus quam*. *E.g.*,

*Let us rather die than live disgracefully,*  
*mōrīāmūr pōtīus quam ut inhōnestē vīvāmūs.*

*He suffered everything rather than give information against his accomplices,*  
*perpessūs est omniā pōtīus quam sōcīōs indicārēt.*

**240.** Verbs of permitting and compelling (*permittō, sīnō, cōgō, impellō*, etc.) take the subjunctive with *ūt*, or the infinitive. *E.g.*,

*He suffered them to pass over safely,*  
*permisit ūt tūtō transirent.*

*I give you leave to reply,*  
*tibi permittō respondere.*

*The Germans do not allow wine to be imported into their country at all,*  
*Germānī vīnum ad sē omnīnō importārī nōn sīnunt.*

*Nor could he be compelled to fight,*  
*nēquē cōgī pugnāre pōtērāt.*

*Reasoning and argument forced me to entertain that belief,*  
*ratiō ac dispūtiō mē impulit ūt itā crēderem.*

*Obs.*—Here belongs the usage of *licēt* (*ūt*). See § 70, NOTE 2.

**241.** Verbs of determining, decreeing, deciding, etc. (*stātūō, constitūō, dēcernō*, etc.), take the subjunctive with *ūt* (negative, *nē*), or (referring to one's own acts) the infinitive. *E.g.*,

*The senate made a decree that Publius' province should be Italy, that of Tiberius Sicily,*  
*dēcrēvit sēnātūs ūt Publīō Itālīā, Sīcīlīā Tībērīō prōvinciā essēt.*

*They resolved to await the arrival of the Romans,*  
*Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre constitūerunt.*

*I had determined to keep silence for ever,*  
*stātūeram in perpētuum tacere.*

**242.** Verbs of attending to and bargaining express the object either by an *ūt* (negative, *nē*) clause, or by the accusative of the gerundive. Such are *cūrō* and *pāciscōr*. *E.g.*,

*He saw that (took care that) ships were built,*  
*nāvēs faciendās (or ūt nāvēs fiērent) cūrāvīt.*

*To bargain with vows that one's merchandise adds not its treasures to the greedy sea,*  
*vōtīs pācisci, nē mercēs āvārō divitiās addant mārī.*

**243.** In affirmative object clauses after any verb of ordering, bidding (*impērō, dīcō*), asking (*rōgō, flāgītō, ōrō, quaerō*), permitting (*permittō, sīnō, concēdō*), in colloquial style and in poetry, the subjunctive may be used in semi-dependence without *ūt*. So with the imperatives *fāc, cūrā*; and regularly with verbs of wishing, with *oportēt*, and with verbs or phrases expressing necessity. *E.g.*,

*He exhorts the townspeople to defend the walls,*  
*oppidānōs hortātūr, moeniā dēfendant.*

*The people are entreating him to lower the price of provisions,*  
*flāgītāt pōpūlūs annōnam lēvēt.*

*I beg you will come,*  
*ōrō vēniās.*

*I will allow him to go,*  
*concēdam ēāt.*

*I could have wished that it had been true,*  
*vellem vērūm fūissēt.*

*Obs.*—For a similar construction with *cāvē* see § 220.

**244.** Verbs of hindering and preventing take an object clause in the subjunctive. If the verb is positive, the object clause is introduced by *quōmīnūs* or *nē*; if negative, by *quīn*, or, less often, *quōmīnūs*. But with *prōhībēō* the infinitive may always be used. *E.g.*,

*The enemy tried to prevent us from crossing the river,*  
*hostēs nōs prōhībēbant flūmēn transirē.*

*The bad state of your health kept you from coming to the Games,*  
*tē infirmītās vālētūdīnīs tēnūit quōmīnūs ād lūdōs vēnirēs.*

*They scarcely restrained themselves from making a charge,*  
*vix tempērāvērē ānīmīs quīn impētum fācērent.*

*And age does not prevent us from keeping our enthusiasm for tilling the soil,*  
*nēc aetās impēdit quōmīnūs agrī cōlendī stūdiā tēnēāmūs.*

NOTE 1.—*Quīn* may also introduce the object clause after a verb of doubting or being ignorant, when such verb is negatived. *E.g.*, *Every one knows that . . .*, *nēmō ignōrāt quīn . . . etc.*; *I have no doubt that . . .*, *nōn dūbītō quīn . . . etc.*

NOTE 2.—And *quīn* (as the equivalent of *quī nōn*, *quae nōn*, *quōd nōn*) may follow any negative clause. E.g., *There is no one but knows*, *nēmō est quīn sciāt*; *You would scarce find any one but has this opinion*, *vix ūnum invēniās quīn haec sentiāt* (where *vix ūnum* is virtually equivalent to *nullum fermē*).

\*NOTE 3.—*Impēdiō*, like *prōhibēō*, admits an infinitive as object, as also does *dūbitō* in the sense of “to hesitate.” E.g., *What prevents me from following such opinions as seem to me probable?* *quid mē impēdit sēquī ēā quae prōbābiliā mīhi vidēantūr?* *I would not hesitate to face the most trying storms*, *nōn dūbitāverim mē grāvissimis tempestātibus obvium ferrē*.

245. An English positive object clause after a verb of fearing is introduced in Latin by *nē*, an English negative clause by *ūt* or *nē nōn*. E.g.,

*I fear he is coming,*  
*vērēōr nē vēniāt.*

*I fear he is not coming,*  
*vērēōr ūt vēniāt.*

*I am not afraid of his not coming,*  
*nōn vērēōr nē nōn vēniāt.*

Obs.—*Nē nōn* is generally used when the verb of fearing is negatived or when it forms an interrogation with negative force.

246. But where the sense requires the infinitive in English after a verb of fearing, a like construction is used in Latin. E.g.,

*They dreaded to put to the test their hopes of the struggle,*  
*mētūerunt tentārē spem certāminis.*

247. Any verb of fearing, when used in the sense of “being anxious about,” may take an object clause in the form of an indirect question. E.g.,

*I am apprehensive whether something else must not be said here,*  
*vērēōr num hīc aliūd sīt dīcendum.*

*I am anxious as to how this will end,*  
*haec quō sint ēruptūrā tīmēō.*

---

## CHAPTER XVI.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

248. A conditional (or hypothetical) sentence is one in which the occurrence of an event is represented as depending on the fulfilment of a certain condition. The conditional or *if* clause is called the *protasis*; the principal sentence is termed the *apodosis*. *E.g.*, in the sentence, "If he were to come, I should see him," the *protasis* is "If he were to come," the *apodosis* is "I should see him."

The conditional particles which introduce the *protasis* are *sī* (strengthened, *ěťiamsī*); *sivě* (in double or alternative conditions); *nīsī*, *sī nōn* (rarely *nī*) in negative conditions.

Conditional sentences are of three classes, according as they relate to

- (A) Conditions in present or past time, which may be, or may have been, fulfilled.
- (B) Conditions in future time, which may be fulfilled.
- (C) Conditions in present or past time, unfulfilled.

*Obs.*—From the use of "if" to introduce a conditional clause must be carefully distinguished its use in the sense of "whether" to introduce a dependent question. In the latter case "if" must be rendered by *-ně* or *num*; *e.g.*, *He asked if you were well*, *rōgāvīt num vālērēs*.

249. (A) Conditional sentences relating to conditions in time present or past, of which the fulfilment or non-fulfilment is not implied, require the **indicative** mood in both clauses. *E.g.*,

*If this is so, I am glad* (but whether it is so or not, I do not hint).  
*sī rēs itā sē hăbět, gauděō.*

*If he has said this, I am glad* (but am quite uncertain whether he has or no).  
*sī hōc dixīt, gauděō.*

*If I killed him, I did right* (but I do not say whether I killed him or no).  
*sī illum occidī, rectē fēcī.*



NOTE 1.—After *sī* or *nīsī*, the indefinite *quīs*, *quā*, *quīd* (unemphatic form), is used to express *any one*, *anything*; so too *if anywhere* = *sīcūbi*; *if at any time* = *sī quandō*; *if from any place* = *sīcundē*.

NOTE 2.—The verb of the apodosis may be imperative or jussive subjunctive. E.g., *If they have come, let us rejoice, sī vēnērunt, gaudēāmūs*.

250. (B) Conditional sentences relating to conditions in future time, the fulfilment or non-fulfilment of which is not implied, are expressed—

(a) Vividly, by the use of the simple future indicative in the apodosis, and the future-perfect in the protasis.

E.g.,

*If he knows this, he will be very angry with us,*  
*quōd sī nōtum hābuerīt, vēhementēr succensēbīt nōbīs.*

*I shall rejoice, if you say this,*  
*sī vōs haec dixerītis, gaudēbō.*

*You will cease to fear if you cease to hope,*  
*dēsīnēs tīmērē, sī spērārē dēsīēris.*

Obs.—In the protasis of conditional sentences of this kind English uses the present or present-perfect tense.

NOTE 1.—The future-perfect is used to denote a future action completed before the occurrence of another future action. But if the future actions are simultaneous, the future simple is used both in the protasis and in the apodosis; see NOTE 3.

NOTE 2.—A future imperative, a gerundive or a future participle with *sum*, etc., being all equivalent to futures, may stand in the apodosis; e.g., *If I say rather much about myself, you must pardon me, sī dē mē ipsō plūrā dixerō, ignoscītōtē*.

NOTE 3.—In the vivid form, the simple future or the future-perfect may stand in both the protasis and the apodosis; e.g., *We shall be cured if we wish it, sanābimūr sī vōlēmūs*; *I shall breathe freely again if I see you, respīrārō sī tē vīdērō*.

\*NOTE 4.—And, rarely, the present indicative is found in the protasis, as in the English form; e.g., *Supposing we are victorious, we shall find everything safe, sī vincīmūs, omniā nōbīs tūtā ērunt*. And the perfect may stand in the apodosis, but only in rhetorical speech; e.g., *If you maintain the same spirit, our victory is assured, sī ēundem ānīmum hābuerītis, vīcīmūs* (lit., *we have conquered*).



(b) But to represent the condition in a less distinct and vivid form, both verbs may be in the **present subjunctive**.  
*E.g.,*

*If your country were to converse thus with you, ought she not to prevail?*

**hæc sī tēcum patriā lōquātūr, nōnne impetrārē dēbēāt?**

*If this should occur, I should be greatly distressed,*  
**sī hōc ēvēniāt, valdē dōlēam.**

NOTE 1.—Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used in the apodosis; *Should he feel the pangs of hunger, he would rob another man of his food, sī fāmē conficiātūr, abstulērīt cībūm altēri.*

251. (C) Conditional sentences relating to conditions in time present or past of which the non-fulfilment is known and implied are expressed by the **imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive** in both clauses.

(a) The **imperfect subjunctive** relates to conditions known to be unfulfilled in the present. *E.g.,*

*And if any one loved them, he would be a man to be hated (but no one does love them),*

**quōs sī quīs āmārēt, ābōmīnandūs essēt.**

*If he were here, I should be glad (but he is not here),*  
**sī ādessēt, gaudērem.**

(b) The **pluperfect subjunctive** relates to conditions known to have been unfulfilled in the past. *E.g.,*

*If the auxiliary troops had come up, the city would now have been taken (but they did not),*

**iam captā essēt urbs, sī subvēnissent auxiliā.**

*Had I seen it, I would have written (but I did not see it),*  
**sī vidissem, scripsissem.**

NOTE 1.—The sense frequently requires that the pluperfect subjunctive should stand in the protasis and the imperfect subjunctive in the apodosis; e.g., *If he had not acted wisely, he would be lying in gaol to-day, nisi prūdentēr ēgissēt, hōdiē in carcērē iācērēt.*

NOTE 2.—Such conditions are frequently expressed in English, as in the second example, by “had I,” “had you,” etc. A similar ellipsis of **sī** in Latin is very rare, and is rhetorical or poetical.

**252.** The verb *sum*, accompanied by a gerund, gerundive, or future participle, and any verb implying duty, necessity, propriety, etc., is regularly put in the indicative in the *apodosis* of conditions known to be unfulfilled. Such verbs are *possum*, *dēbēō*, *oportet*, *dēcet*, *necessē est*. *E.g.*,

*Had he done it, he ought assuredly to have been loved,*  
*quōd sī fēcissēt, certē diligendūs ērāt.*

*If Sestius had been killed, would you have had recourse to arms ?*  
*sī Sestiūs occisūs essēt, fūistisnē ad armā atūrī ?*

*You ought to be avoiding vice, if you took any interest in goodness,*  
*sī virtūtī stūdērēs, vītium vītārē dēbēbās.*

\*NOTE.—Compare the phrases, *It would be tedious*, *longum est*; *It would be better*, *satiūs est*, *melius est*.

**\*253.** Occasionally in poetry and even in prose the imperfect and pluperfect indicative are found in the *apodosis*, in lieu of the corresponding tenses of the subjunctive. In such sentences a circumstance is vividly represented as having happened, while the added condition shews that it just failed to come to pass. *E.g.*,

*We should have gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antonius,*  
*praeclārē vicērāmūs, nīsī Lēpidūs rēcēpissēt Antōnīūm.*

*A tree trunk, falling on my head, had killed me, had not Faunus lightened the blow,*  
*mē truncūs illapsūs cērebrō sustūlērāt, nīsī Faunūs ictum lēvassēt.*

**\*254.** In conditions known to be unfulfilled in past time, the *protasis* may stand in the imperfect subjunctive when the condition is viewed as still valid—*i.e.*, when the imperfect is used in its full force to express what *was* in the past *and still is*. *E.g.*,

*Did not death prevent it, there would by now have been many immortals,*  
*nīsī mors obstārēt, multī iam exstītissent immortalēs.*

\*255. When conditions are stated indefinitely, *i.e.*, when the subject of the *protasis* is an **indefinite person** (*you, one, people*), they may be expressed in Latin by any of the preceding forms, or by the present subjunctive in the 2nd person singular. *E.g.*,

*The mind is worn out if you exercise it; if you do not exercise it, it gathers rust,*  
 contēritūr mens, sī exercēās; nīlī exercēās, rōbīgīnem contrāhīt.

256. When the same *apodosis* is found with more than one *protasis*, the latter will be introduced by *sī . . . ēt . . . ēt . . .*, if they are connected in English by *and*; by *sī (sīvē, seu) . . . sīvē (seu) . . . sīvē (seu) . . .*, if they are distinguished by *whether . . . or, etc.*; or by *sī nēquē . . . nēquē . . . nēquē . . .* (negative). *Sī . . . nēquē . . .* introduce two protases, whereof the former is positive, the latter negative. *E.g.*,

*That is my favourite resort, whether I am occupied with my own reflections or am engaged in reading,*  
 illō lōcō libentissimē solēō ūtī, sīvē quīd mēcum ipsē cōgītō sīvē lēgō.

*You would do it, should you have courage and not be afraid,*  
 sī audēās nēc timēās, id tū faciās.

NOTE 1.—Double protases are often expressed in English by “whether . . . or . . .” These words serve also to introduce a double indirect question, and care must be taken to distinguish these two usages when translating. *E.g.*, *He asked whether I was rich or poor, rōgāvīt utrum dīvēs ān paupēr essem* (indirect question); *He asks me for money, whether I am rich or poor, mē pēcūniam rōgāt, sīvē dīvēs sum sīvē paupēr* (alternative protasis).

\*NOTE 2.—The English “but if,” when merely resuming the thread of discourse, is to be rendered by *quōd sī* (see § 135, NOTE 1). If, however, it is adversative—*i.e.*, introduces a new conditional sentence, the *protasis* of which contradicts that of a preceding conditional sentence—it is to be rendered by *sīn*. *E.g.*, *If this is your opinion, I am glad of it; but if you think the matter stands otherwise, I do not at all agree, sī haec sentīs, gaudēō; sīn ālītēr rem sē hābērē pūtās, mīnīmē assentiōr*. If the new protasis is merely the negative of the preceding, *sī mīnūs* or *sīn mīnūs* will be used and the verb suppressed; *e.g.*, *Take out all your followers; if not, as many as possible, ēdūc omnēs tūōs; sī mīnūs, quam plūrīmōs*.

**257.** A conditional statement may be made without any condition being expressed; *e.g.*, “I should be glad to see him,” “I should have been glad to see him.” Here some such conditional clause as “if he were to come,” “if he had come,” may be understood.

Such conditional statements are expressed in Latin by the **potential subjunctive**, the **present subjunctive** being used when the action is future and therefore regarded as possible, the **imperfect** when it is desired to indicate that the action would have taken place in the past had some undefined condition been fulfilled.

When the potential subjunctive serves to indicate that a statement is made with modesty and diffidence, the **perfect subjunctive** is used.

*Perhaps it would hardly seem likely,*  
vix vērīsimilē fortassē vidēātūr.

*You would have noticed (had you been there) their different expressions of countenance as they parted,*  
vārīōs vultūs dīgrēdiētiū cernērēs.

*Here a man would ask (if occasion arose),*  
hic quaerāt quispiām.

*Then you might have noticed whisperings (had you looked),*  
tum sūsurrōs vidērēs.

*With your permission I would say . . .*  
pācē tuā dixērim.

\*NOTE.—The apodosis may answer to the mere implication of a condition in some word in the sentence. *E.g.*, *No one would give himself up to die for his country without (= if he had not) a great hope of immortality,* nēmō sinē magnā spē immortalitātis sē prō patriā ad mortem offerret. Hence the conditional use of the ablative absolute, § 84 (c).

**258.** The relative **quī** takes the **subjunctive** when used in a clause equivalent to a *protasis*. *E.g.*,

*If any one were to see this, would he not be forced to admit the existence of gods?*  
haec quī vidēāt, nonnē cōgātūr confitēri dēōs essē?

**259.** An apparently conditional clause is used in rendering such expressions as “to see if,” “to try if,” the present subjunctive being used in primary sequence and the imperfect in historic sequence. *E.g.*,

*He threw his forces across the Rhone, to see if perchance he could crush the enemy,*

*Rhōdānum cōpiās trāiēcīt, sī fortē hostēs opprimērē possēt.*

*Obs.*—The clause introduced by *sī* in such cases is of the nature of a dependent question.

\*NOTE.—*Nīsī fortē* introduces a supposed exception, and in direct speech always takes the indicative; e.g., *Scarcely anybody dances when he is sober, unless perchance he be mad, nēmō fērē saltāt sobriūs, nīsī fortē insānīt.*

## CHAPTER XVII.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES: CON- CESSIVE, COMPARATIVE, CAUSAL, FINAL, CONSECUTIVE, AND TEMPORAL.

### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

**260.** The English “even if” frequently introduces not a condition, but a concession, and is thus equivalent to “although,” “though,” “granting that,” “allowing that,” “no matter how (much, etc.),” “however (much, etc.),” etc.

The concessive particles in Latin are *etsī, etiamsī, tāmetsī; quamquam, quamvis, licēt; ūt, nē; cum.*

NOTE.—A variety of the jussive subjunctive (§ 208) frequently stands as concessive in the present or perfect tense. The negative is *nē*. *E.g.*, *Suppose he is a most infamous man, I care not, sīt illē vīr nēquissimūs, egō nīl mōrōr.*

**261.** *Etsī*, *ētīamsī*, and *tāmetsī* (*although, even if*) take the same constructions as *sī* (§§ 249-251). *E.g.*,

*Although the mountain hindered the march by reason of its very deep snow (actual fact),*

*etsī mons altissimā nivē itēr impēdiēbāt.*

*Even if there had been no news,*

*ētīamsī nihīl novī fūissēt.*

NOTE.—*Etsī* and *ētīamsī* are used with the indicative when the concession is stated as a fact, with the subjunctive when it is made merely for the sake of argument. *Tāmetsī* always takes the indicative.

**262.** *Quamquam* (*although*) takes the indicative, unless the sense requires the potential subjunctive. *E.g.*,

*Though you are in haste, yet the delay is not long,*

*quamquam festīnās, nōn est mōrā longā.*

**263.** *Quamquam* is often merely an adverb of transition at the beginning of a principal sentence (*and yet*). *E.g.*,

*Yet why should I instruct you of all men on this point?*

*quamquam tē quīdem quīd hōc dōcēam?*

**264.** *Quamvīs*, *licēt*, *ūt*, *nē*, and *cum*, when concessive, all require the subjunctive mood. *E.g.*,

*He is a good man all the same, however ignorant he may be of accomplishments,*

*quamvīs sīt rūdīs artīum, tāmēn est vīr hōnestūs.*

*Though you should say everything,*

*licēt omniā dīcās.*

NOTE 1.—For this use of *licēt*, see § 70, NOTE 2. *Licēt* in accordance with its verbal nature follows the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 213) and takes only the present and perfect subjunctive.

NOTE 2.—*Quamvīs* really = *as (great, small, etc., as) you please*. Hence it is the word to use in rendering such a sentence as, *Be as bold as you please, yet, etc. . . .*, *quamvīs sis audax, tāmēn . . .*; or, *Though you were ever so little the supporter of the law, quamvīs nōn fūeris suāsōr lēgis.*

NOTE 3.—*Quamvīs* may also stand as an adverb with adjectives and adverbs; e.g., *Ever so cleverly, ever so boldly, ever so shamelessly, quamvīs callidē, quamvīs audactēr, quamvīs impudentēr.*

## COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

**265.** Comparative clauses are such as express likeness, unlikeness, or comparison, between two or more actions or states. The English words and phrases introducing comparative clauses are “as,” “like as,” “just as”; “in the manner (style, fashion) of”; “as if,” “as though”; and “than” following any comparative adjective or adverb.

**266.** In Latin comparative clauses are introduced by *ūt*, *tamquam*, *nōn sēcūs āc*; *quōmōdō*, *quemadmōdum tamquam sī*, *ūt sī*, *vēlūt sī*, *āc sī*; *quam* preceded by a comparative adjective or adverb; *quam sī*, *quāsī*, etc.

The object of comparison may be a state or action either represented as one (*a*) of known truth, or (*b*) of merely imaginary existence. The former will be expressed by the indicative, the latter by the subjunctive mood. Hence—

**267.** All comparative clauses expressive of imaginary cases require the subjunctive; and therefore all comparative particles containing *sī* require that mood. *E.g.*,

*They shuddered at the barbarity of Ariovistus, just as though he were present before them,*

*Āriōvistī crūdēlītātem, vēlūt sī cōram ādessēt, horrēbant.*

*I will pretend that I am just going out,*

*assimulābō, quāsī nunc exēam.*

\*NOTE 1.—*Prōindē* and *pērindē* (in like manner) are joined with *āc sī*, *ūt sī*, *quāsī*, emphasising the comparison and requiring the subjunctive. *E.g.*, *Just as if you knew, prōindē quāsī nossēs; Just as though he were a common soldier, pērindē āc sī mānipulārīs essēt.*

\*NOTE 2.—Adjectives and adverbs of similarity and dissimilarity frequently replace the genitive or dative of the object by *āc* or *atquē* and a new verbal clause. Such are *aequūs*, *sīmīlīs*, *ālīūs*, and the adverbs *aequē*, *sīmīlītēr*, *ālītēr*, *pārītēr*, *contrā*, *iuxtā*, *sēcūs*. *E.g.*, *Other than he had been before, ālīūs atquē antēā fūērāt; Otherwise than you now do, ālītēr āc nunc faciēs.* If *sī* be further added, the mood is of course subjunctive. (See § 132, NOTE 1.)



**268.** Comparative clauses with the **indicative** are such as relate to matters **stated as facts**. They include, therefore, clauses introduced by words other than the particles mentioned in § 267. Such words are—

(A) All relative adverbs of comparison : (ĩtǎ or sīe) . . ŭt ; quōmōdō ; (tam) . . quam, tamquam (§ 165) ; (ěō) . . quō, (tantō) . . quantō (§ 130, NOTE 1). [See also § 9, NOTE 3.]

(B) All comparative adjectives or adverbs followed by quam (§ 132, NOTE 2).

(C) The adjectives and adverbs mentioned in § 267, NOTE 2. Also pěrĩndě āc, prōĩndě āc.

#### CAUSAL CLAUSES.

**269.** Causal clauses are such as state the reason for any action or state. They are introduced in English by the words “because,” “as,” “since,” “on account of,” etc. The Latin causal particles are quōd, proptěrěā quōd, quĩā, quāndō, quāndōquĩdem, quōnĩam, cum. The relatives quĩ, ŭbi, undě, etc., may also introduce a causal clause.

NOTE.—The commonest use of the English present participle is in a causal sense ; e.g., *Finding retreat impossible, he prepared for battle* (= *because he found retreat impossible*). The Latin present participle cannot be so used. See § 87, NOTE 1.

**270.** All causal clauses (unless introduced by cum or a relative pronoun or adverb) require the **indicative** mood when stating the cause simply as a fact. *E.g.*,

*This he did because the envoys had not yet returned,*  
ĩd fēcĩt quĩā nondum lěgātĩ rědĩerant.

*We eat simply because food is necessary to life,*  
ědĩmũs proptěrěā quōd cĩbō ād vĩtam ōpũs est.



271. But if the cause is stated as conceived or alleged at the time of action, the **subjunctive** is used. *E.g.*,

*I ate because (it seemed to me) I needed food,*  
 ēdēbam quīā ōpūs cibō essēt.

*This he did because (he said, argued, etc.,) the envoys had not returned,*  
 id fēcīt quīā nondum rēdissent lēgātī.

NOTE.—Quōnīam, quāndō, and quāndōquīdem practically always require the indicative.

272. Hence arises the idiom by which, when two alternative causes are given, that which is mentioned as the **true cause** is in the **indicative**, while that which is mentioned as the **false or pretended cause** is in the **subjunctive**. *E.g.*,

*This he did, not because the envoys had not yet returned (though he alleged this reason, untrue as it was), but because his army was too weak (real cause),*

id fēcīt nōn quīā nondum lēgātī rēdissent, sēd quīā infirmīōr ērāt exercītūs.

NOTE.—The subjunctive, therefore, follows **nōn quōd** or **nōn quīā**. **Nōn quō** is used with the subjunctive in the same sense; e.g., *You write this, not on the ground that you yourself heard it,* hōc scribīs, nōn quō ipsē audiēris.

273. **Cum**, the relative **quī**, and the relative adverbs, when used in a causal sense, invariably take the **subjunctive**. **Cum** thus used often takes the place of a participle (§§ 85-89). *E.g.*,

*And as he knew this for certain, he decided that action must be taken at once,*

quōd cum explōrātum hābērēt, stātīm āgendum esse constitūt.

*I seem to myself to have done wrong in having left you,*  
 peccassē mīhi vidēōr quī ā tē discessērīm.

274. This use of the relative is frequently strengthened by the addition of **quippē**, **ūt**, or sometimes **utpōtē**. *E.g.*,

*They were afraid, it is true, because many dangers beset them,*  
 mētūebant sānē, quippē quōs multā pēriculōsā prēmērent.

*I am fairly good-for-nothing, since I have to-day fallen in love,*  
 sātīs nēquam sum, utpōtē quī hōdiē incēpērīm āmārē.

NOTE 1.—**Quippē quī** always takes the subjunctive in Cicero, but elsewhere either the subjunctive or the indicative.

\*NOTE 2.—Livy and other writers use **quippē** to qualify participles and adjectives without any pronoun or verb; e.g., *As he was confident in his strength, quippē fērox virībūs*. It is found also as an introductory particle to express irony; e.g., *Of course I am forbidden by the fates, quippē vētōr fātis*.

## FINAL CLAUSES.

**275.** Final clauses are such as express the purpose with which an action is done.

Such clauses are sometimes introduced in English by “(in order) that he (they, etc.) may (might), etc. . . .,” but are much more often represented by the infinitive with “to” (“in order to”). *E.g.*, “I came that I might see you,” or “I came (in order) to see you.”

In Latin such clauses are introduced by **ūt** (negative **nē**), **quī** (relative), or any relative adverb.

The Latin infinitive can *never* express purpose in prose.

**276.** The purpose of an action may be expressed in any one of the following ways:—

- (i.) By **ūt** (**nē**) and the subjunctive (see § 277). This is the only normal means of expressing negative purpose.
- (ii.) By **quī**, **quō**, **ūbi**, **undē**, etc., and the subjunctive; rarely negative. See § 278.
- (iii.) By the gerundival construction with **ād** and accusative; never negative. See § 92, NOTE 1 (c).
- (iv.) By the gerundival construction with **causā** or **grātīā** (*for the sake of*) and the genitive; never negative. See § 93.

(v.) By the **supine** in **-um**, but only when the principal action is expressed by a verb of motion; never negative. See § 97.

(vi.) By the **gerundive** used predicatively. Cp. § 242.

NOTE 1.—By far the commonest construction is that with **ūt** or **nē**. That with the relative and relative adverbs is the next commonest. The gerundival usages are employed usually in short phrases only. For the future participle expressing purpose, see § 81, NOTE 4.

NOTE 2.—The negative in subjunctive clauses of purpose is **nē**, sometimes **ūt nē**.

\*NOTE 3.—Here belongs the use of **ūt** in such clauses as, *To return to the point*, **ūt ād rem rēdēāmūs**; *So to speak*, **ūt itā dicam**, etc.

### Examples—

*He sent envoys to sue for peace,*

- (i.) **mīsīt lēgātōs ūt pācem pētērent,**
- (ii.) **mīsīt lēgātōs quī pācem pētērent,**
- (iii.) **mīsīt lēgātōs ād pācem pētendam,**
- (iv.) **mīsīt lēgātōs pācis pētendae causā or grātīā,**
- (v.) **mīsīt lēgātōs pācem pētītum.**
- (vi.) *He handed over the army to his lieutenant to be led against the enemy,* **lēgātō exercītum dēdīt īn hōstēs dūcendum.**

**277.** The **tense** of the verb in the final clause will depend on that of the principal verb according to the rule for the sequence of tenses. *E.g.,*

*This I am saying to persuade you of what is true,*  
**haec dicō ūt vōbīs quōd vērū est persuādēam.**

*You will come back to hear it,*  
**rēdībīs ūt audīās.**

*He was causing delays lest anything should be gained by entreaty*  
**mōrās faciēbāt nē quīd impetrārētūr.**

*He has taken care that you may know,*  
**cūrāvīt ūt sciās.**

NOTE 1.—For the use of **quīs**, indefinite, with **nē**, see § 168.

\*NOTE 2.—A second final clause, if negative, is introduced by **nēvē** (**neu**); e.g., *This I did that I might be preserved and might not perish,*  
**hōc fēcī ūt servārēr nēvē pērīrem.**

**278.** The same holds good of the relative *quī* and the relative adverbs, which are in this construction equivalent to the corresponding demonstratives followed by *ūt*. Thus, *quī* = *ūt is*; *quae* = *ūt eā*; *cūiūs* = *ūt eiūs*; *quō* = *ūt eō*; *ūbi* = *ūt ibi*; *undē* = *ūt indē*; *quōmīnūs* = *ūt eō mīnūs*. *E.g.*,

*I had sent a man to tell you all,*  
*mīsēram quī tibi dīcērēt omniā.*

*He chose a place where the army might halt,*  
*lōcum dēlēgīt ūbi consistērēt agmēn.*

*He has chosen a spot whence an ambush may rush out,*  
*lōcum dēlēgīt undē ērumpant insīdiae.*

NOTE 1.—*Quō*, meaning *in order that*, is used in clauses which contain a comparative. *E.g.*, *This he did in order the more easily to finish the business, id fēcīt quō faciīūs rem pērāgērēt* (lit., *that he might by so much the more easily finish the business*).

NOTE 2.—Negative final clauses rarely occur with the relatives, etc. In almost all cases *nē* (sometimes *ūt nē*) is used.

**\*279.** *Nēdum* (*much less, not to speak of*) is followed by the subjunctive. *E.g.*,

*The deeds of men will perish; much less does the esteem and favour yielded to language endure and live,*  
*mortālīā factā perībunt, nēdum sermōnum stēt hōnōs ēt grātiā vīvax.*

### CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

**280.** A consecutive clause is one which expresses the result or consequence of an action or state.

The English phrases introducing a consecutive clause are “so that,” “so . . . that,” “so as to,” “such as to,” “such that”; and simply “to” in many cases, which, however, must be carefully distinguished from “to” in a final sense (§ 275).

The Latin words introducing such clauses are *ūt*, the relative *quī*, and the relative adverbs. The mood is always

subjunctive. The principal sentence often contains a correlative, *e.g.*, *itā, sic, adēo, tam*.

281. In form there is no difference, in Latin, between a positive final and a positive consecutive clause. But the corresponding negative clauses are distinguished by the invariable rule that, whereas final clauses take *nē, nē quīs, nēcūbi, nē umquam*, etc., consecutive clauses take *ūt nōn, ūt nēmō, ūt nusquam, ūt numquam*, etc.

NOTE.—For the perfect subjunctive in consecutive clauses in secondary sequence, see § 215, NOTE 2.

282. The distinction in meaning between the following correlatives of result must be carefully noted:—*adēo . . . ūt, tam . . . ūt* = *to such a degree that*; *sic . . . ūt, itā . . . ūt* = *in such a way that*. Both are usually rendered in English by *so that*, or *so as to*. *E.g.*,

*He replied so that (i.e., in such a way that) all believed him,*  
*itā respondit ūt omnēs crēderent.*

*He answered so (i.e., to such a degree) rapidly that no one heard him,*  
*adēo celerit̃er respondit ūt nēmō audir̃et.*

\*NOTE.—Carefully distinguish from this usage (a) the use of *itā (sic) . . . ūt . . .* in comparative clauses (§ 268), and (b) the use of *ūt . . . itā . . .* corresponding to the English *not only . . . but also . . .*, or *though . . . yet . . .* In both these usages *ūt* requires the indicative. *E.g.*, *Though he will favour his friends, yet he will withstand his foes,*  
*ūt amicis favēbit, itā inimicis resistēt.*

283. *Cum*, the relative *quī*, and the adverbs enumerated in § 278, may all introduce consecutive clauses. In this case, *quī* = *ūt is (so that he)*; *ūbi* = *ūt ibi (so that, such that, there)*. *E.g.*,

*Caesar is not the man to hesitate,*  
*nōn est Caesar quī haesitēt (lit., such a man as hesitates).*

*I should like you to prefer to be in a place where you are of some account, rather than in a place where you alone seem to be wise,*  
*vēlīm ibi mālis essē ūbi āliquo nūmērō sis, quam istic ūbi sōlūs sǎpērē vidēārē.*

NOTE.—Here belongs the use of *est quī, sunt quī, etc.*, which take the subjunctive when meaning *There is a (sort of) man who, There is a class of men who, etc.* (indefinite antecedent). This is sometimes called the “generic” subjunctive. But *est quī, sunt quī, etc.* take the indicative when merely stating the existence of a particular man or men with the attribute mentioned (definite antecedent). E.g., *There are people who have no garments dyed with purple, there is one man who does not care to have them, vēstēs mūrīcē tinctās sunt quī nōn hābēant, est quī nōn cūrāt hābērē.*

284. With both *ūt* and *quī* (*quae, quōd*) may stand the pronoun *īs* (*ēā, id*) as antecedent. *E.g.,*

*He was such that all hated him,*  
*īs ērāt ūt omnēs ōdissent.*

*You are the man for us to love (such a man as we love),*  
*īs ēs quem amēmūs.*

*I am not seeking such a woman as was Clytaemnestra,*  
*nōn ēam quaerō quae fūērīt Clŷtaemnestrā.*

NOTE.—Here observe the rendering of *To be on the point of . . . , on the eve of . . . , just about to . . .* by *īn ēō essē ūt . . .*; e.g., *They were just starting, īn ēō ērant ūt prōficiscērentūr.* The same phrase also bears the meaning, *In such a condition that . . .*; e.g., *Matters are come to such a pass that we must have advice, rēs īn ēō est ūt consiliō ōpūs sīt.*

285. The relative with the subjunctive is the regular construction after adjectives signifying *merit* or *demerit, fitness, etc.* Such are *dignūs, indignūs, aptūs, idōnēūs.*  
*E.g.,*

*The matter is worth our spending time on it,*  
*dignā est rēs īn quā ēlābōrēmūs.*

*There was no one fit to be imitated by you,*  
*idōnēūs fūīt nēmō quem imitārērē.*

*Obs.*—The English infinitive which follows such words must never be expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive.

286. Among consecutive clauses belongs the *periphrastic future infinitive, i.e.,* the future infinitive of the substantive verb (*fōrē, fūtūrum essē*) followed by *ūt* with

present or imperfect subjunctive. This is the only possible construction with verbs which have no supine stem.

*E.g.,*

*I hoped to learn to speak Latin,*  
spērābam fōrē ūt Lātīnē lōquī discērem.

*I think Caesar will be loved,*  
pŭtō fōrē ūt Caesār āmētŭr.

NOTE.—The tense of the subjunctive in this periphrastic future follows the rule for the sequence of tenses (see § 213). That is, it will be present when the verb upon which the substantive verb future (fōrē, fŭtŭrum essē) depends is primary; imperfect when the verb is historic. (For the supine with īrī, see § 98.)

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

287. Temporal clauses are those which define the time of an action or state by reference to some other action or state.

The usual particles of time in English are “when,” “before,” “after that,” “as soon as,” “as often as,” “while,” “until,” etc.

The chief Latin particles of time are *cum*, *ŭbi*, *ŭt*, *quandōquē*, *quandōcumquē*; *antēquam*, *prīusquam*; *postquam*, *postēāquam*; *sīmŭl āc* (*atquē*); *quōtīēs*; *dum*; *dōnēc*, *quōād*.

All temporal clauses in direct speech, when expressing mere relations of time, take the indicative mood.

NOTE.—*Sīmŭl* may stand without *āc*, in the sense of “as soon as.”

288. Temporal clauses referring to future time employ the same usage of the future-perfect which occurs in conditional clauses referring to future time, § 250 (*a*).

*E.g.,*

*I will tell you all when you come,*  
*cum vēnērīs, tībi omniā dīcam.*

*Obs.*—With *antēquam* and *prīusquam*, however, the present indicative is usual; e.g., *Before I begin to speak on Lucius Murena's behalf, I will say something on my own, antē quam prō Lūciō Mūrēnā dīcērē institŭō, prō mē ipsō paucā dīcam.*

*Lat. Comp.*



NOTE.—In these cases the future-perfect is used because the time considered is that at which some future event will have been completed. (The English use of the present, being merely idiomatic, must not be reproduced in Latin.) If, however, the time considered is that *during* which some future event will be in progress, the future simple is used; e.g., *I will make every preparation when you are coming* (i.e., when you are already on the way, but not yet arrived), *cum veniēs, omniā pārābō*.

**289.** Frequency or repetition may be expressed by *cum*, *ūt*, or *ūbi*, and their compounds, with the indicative. *E.g.*,

*As often as (whenever) I arrive at my country-house, it is my delight to be idle,*

*cum ad villam venī, nihīl āgērē mē dēlectāt.*

NOTE 1.—More often, *quōtīēs* is used in such sentences with or without its correlative *tōtīēs*; e.g., *I regularly wonder that I don't receive letters from you as often as they are brought me from my brother Quintus, solēō mirārī nōn mē tōtīēs accipērē tuās littērās quōtīēs ā Quintō mīhi frātrē affēruntūr.* So too, *quōtīescumquē*.

\*NOTE 2.—Livy and later writers express repetition by the subjunctive with *ūbi* or *ūt*; e.g., *Whenever anything had to be done with courage, ūbi quīd fortītēr āgendum essēt.*

**290.** (a) The time at which an action takes place is expressed by *cum* with a dependent clause in the **present**, **future**, or **future-perfect indicative**, referring to present or future time; and by *cum* with the **imperfect** or **pluperfect subjunctive**, referring respectively to a past action contemporaneous with or prior to that of the main verb. But if a past action, whether contemporaneous or prior, is mentioned solely to mark the date at which the action of the principal verb took place and belongs to a totally different set of circumstances, the **imperfect** or **perfect indicative** is used. *E.g.*,

*When he had said this in a loud voice he threw himself from the ship,*

*hōc cum vōcē magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiecit.*

*I wrote that book when I was at the head of the state,*  
*illum librum tum scripsimūs cum gūbernaculā rēi publicae*  
*tēnēbāmūs.*



(b) Sometimes, as in English, an inversion of the logical order takes place, what would logically be the principal sentence being made dependent on *cum*; in such sentences the verb of the temporal clause is always indicative. *E.g.*,

*He was coming up to the walls when the Romans suddenly made a sally,*  
illē sūbībāt mūrōs cum rēpēntē ērumpunt Rōmānī.

291. *Prīusquam*, *antēquam* take the indicative when they denote *before* in a purely temporal sense.

*The games were not finished before three gladiators had been killed,*  
lūdī nōn finītī sunt antēquam trēs glādiātōrēs interfectī sunt.

They take the subjunctive when the action expressed by the clause they introduce is purposely anticipated or (when the principal sentence is negative) purposely awaited. In this usage the subjunctive is one of purpose (final subjunctive). *E.g.*,

*The Roman rushed in before the gates could be closed against him (i.e., he hurried on purpose to anticipate the closing of the gates),*  
Rōmānūs, prīusquam fōrēs obicērentūr, irrūpīt.

*The Gauls would not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms (i.e., they awaited their consent),*  
Gallī nōn prīūs dūcēs dīmīttunt quam āb hīs sīt concessum armā ūtī cāpīant.

NOTE 1.—*Prīusquam*, *antēquam*, like *postquam* take the perfect tense in Latin, where in English the pluperfect is used; see § 202.

NOTE 2.—*Prīusquam*, *antēquam*, *postquam* are frequently written as two words and may be placed in separate clauses, *quam* introducing the dependent clause; *e.g.*, in the second example above.

292. *Dum*, and less often *dōnēc*, *quōā*d, and *quamdiū*, meaning *while*, *as long as*, when the action of the principal verb lasts as long as that of the verb in the temporal clause, take the indicative. *E.g.*,

*People learn while they are teaching,*  
hōmīnēs, dum dōcent, discunt.

NOTE.—*Dum*, *while*, of an action occupying a longer time than the time covered by the action of the principal verb, takes the present in Latin where English uses the past; see § 200.

293. *Dum*, *dōnēc*, and *quōāđ*, meaning *until*, take the indicative, provided nothing more than the time of the action is denoted. *E.g.*,

*They fought until their leader was killed,*  
*pugnāvērunt, dum dux interfectūs est.*

But when the action expressed by the temporal clause is purposely awaited, *dum* with the subjunctive is used. *E.g.*,

*Wait until I can meet Atticus,*  
*exspectā dum Atticum convēniām.*

294. The subjunctive must be used with the "particles of proviso," that is, *dum*, *dummōđ*, and *mōđ*, when signifying *provided that, if only*; the negative is always *nē*. *E.g.*,

*Let them hate, provided they fear,*  
*ōdērint, dum mētūant.*

*Provided only sternness be not varied,*  
*dummōđ sēvēritās nē vāriētūr.*

\*NOTE 1.—*Tantum*, *tantum nē*, are occasionally found with the same meaning and construction.

NOTE 2.—From this must be distinguished the ordinary usages of *mōđ* (i.) = *tantum*, *only*; (ii.) *just now*; (iii.) repeated, *mōđ . . . mōđ*, *at one moment . . . at another, now . . . anon*.

NOTE 3.—The following examples illustrate all the admissible uses of *dum*:—

- (1) *While the elephants were being taken across, he had sent cavalry to act as scouts, dum ēlēphantī trāciuntūr, ēquitēs misērāt spēcūlātum.*
  - (2) *I shall stay during (all) the spring, dum vēr ērit, mănēbō.*
  - (3) *I stayed until (the moment when) they came, dum vērērunt, mănēbam.*
  - (4) *I stayed (and purposely waited) until they should come, dum vērērent, mănēbam.*
  - (5) *Provided they have started, I will wait, dum prōfectī sint, mănēbō.*
-

## CHAPTER XVIII.—EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

295. The adjectives *quī*, *quōt*, *quantūs*, and *quālīs*, and the adverbs *quam* and *ūt*, may all introduce exclamatory expressions with a verb in the **indicative** mood. *E.g.*,

*How learned he was !*  
*quantā ērāt doctrīnā !*

*How fearless he is !*  
*quam nīl tīmēt !*

*How carried away they are with joy !*  
*ūt illī effēruntūr laetītiā !*

*What a man he was !*  
*quī vīr fūit !*

296. **Exclamations** containing a simple verb may be expressed also by the **infinitive**, the subject being put in the accusative. Such sentences correspond to the English phrases, “to think that,” “the idea that,” etc. *E.g.*,

*But to think that you will not be at Rome !*  
*āt tē Rōmae nōn fōrē !*

*To think of my desisting from my undertaking !*  
*mēnē inceptō dēsistērē !*

For the simple accusative in exclamations requiring no verb, see § 137.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.—CONJUNCTIVES, DISJUNCTIVES, AND NEGATIVES.

297. In English *and* is usually inserted between the last two items only of a list, but in Latin a conjunctive particle (ēt, -quē, atquē, āc) should either (i.) be repeated with each item after or (in the case of ēt or -quē) including the first, or (ii.) be omitted throughout. *E.g.*,

*We mortals must seek for rank, glory, wealth, and goodwill.*  
nōbīs mortālībūs appētendā sunt (ēt) hōnōs ēt glōriā ēt dīvītīae  
ēt bēnēvolentiā (or hōnōs, glōriā, dīvītīae, bēnēvolentiā).

\**Obs.*—The omission of such conjunctions is known as *asyndeton*.

\*298. When of two co-ordinate clauses the first is negative and the second positive, the latter is in English introduced by *but*, but in Latin by ēt. *E.g.*,

*I consider that it is not a deed of ordinary affection, but one of the highest ability and wisdom,*  
īd nēquē āmōrīs mēdiocrīs ēt ingēnīī summī āc sāpientīae iūdicō.

299. A double negative is equivalent to an affirmative. *E.g.*, nēc nōn = ēt; nōn nullūs = ālīquī, nullī nōn = omnēs (cp. § 172, NOTE); nōn numquam = interdum, numquam nōn = semp̄r, etc. But nullūs, nēmō, numquam, nusquam, are sometimes followed by nēc (nēquē) . . . nēc (nēquē) . . . in clauses which do not negative, but merely analyse, them. *E.g.*,

*No one was there, either senator or knight,*  
nullūs ādērāt nēc sēnātūr nēc ēquēs.

\*NOTE.—A similar *intensive* use of nē . . . quīdem in a single clause after nōn is rare; e.g., *They thought themselves unable to acquit even a guiltless man,* rēbantūr sē nōn possē nē innoxīum quīdem absolvērē.

**300.** *Aut . . . aut*, properly speaking, distinguish alternatives which are diametrically opposed; *vĕl . . . vĕl . . .*, and the enclitic *-vĕ*, imply that the difference is one of detail. *E.g.*,

*Either life or death is to be chosen,*  
*sūmendā est aut mors aut vītā.*

*He will pay the penalty by death or by exile,*  
*poenās vĕl mortē vĕl exsiliō exsolvet.*

*Two or three friends of the king are very rich,*  
*amīci rēgis dūo tresvĕ perdīvītēs sunt.*

\*NOTE.—*Vĕl* is frequently used by Cícero as an adverb meaning “even,” particularly with superlatives; e.g., *Even Epicūrus would have allowed this, haec vĕl Epīcūrus concēderēt; Even the greatest of all, omnium vĕl maximūs.*

**\*301.** *Nōn mōdō, nōn solum* (*not only*), are followed by *sĕd ĕtiam, vĕrum ĕtiam*, in affirmative clauses; by *sĕd nōn, sĕd nē . . . quīdem*, in negative clauses. *E.g.*,

*Not only does he hear, but he even believes it!*  
*nōn mōdō audit, sĕd ĕtiam crēdit.*

*Not only does he listen, but he is not even afraid,*  
*nōn mōdō audit, sĕd nē tīmēt quīdem.*

\*NOTE.—The second *nōn* is generally omitted from the phrase *nōn mōdō nōn . . . sĕd nē . . . quīdem*, provided that the predicate or some other word in the second clause is common to both clauses; e.g., *There is reigning at Rome an immigrant, who is not merely not of a neighbouring, but not even of an Italian, stock, regnāt Rōmae advēnā nōn mōdō vicīnae, sĕd nē Itālicae quīdem stirpīs.* Here the common word is *stirpīs*.

*Obs.*—The emphasised word must always stand between the particles *nē . . . quīdem*.

---

## CHAPTER XX.—DEPENDENT STATEMENTS; SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUB-DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

**302.** By a **dependent statement** is meant one which, instead of being quoted in the speaker's actual words, is made to depend upon a verb of saying, or other verb belonging to the same class as those which introduce the accusative and infinitive construction (§ 104). *E.g.*, the sentence, "He said that all who were present would agree with him if he were to ask them," contains the dependent form of the direct statement, "If I were to ask you, all you who are present would agree with me."

**303.** The best way to ensure accuracy in rendering into Latin any given English sentence containing a dependent statement is first to write out that statement as it would be if put into the mouth of the original speaker or writer. See the example in § 302.

This sentence may then easily be rendered into Latin by the aid of the subjoined rules, in which it is assumed that the tense of the introductory verb is, as usual, *historic*.

**304.** All principal statements which in direct speech require the **indicative** mood pass into the **infinitive** mood, in accordance with § 104; the subject of the infinitive being, of course, in the accusative.

The tenses used are as follows:—

Direct Statement.		Dependent Statement.	
Indicative present		Infinitive present	
„	imperfect	}	„ perfect
„	perfect, pluperfect		
„	future		
„	fut.-perf. (active)	}	„ future
„	„ (passive)		
		Perfect participle with <i>fōrē</i> .	

**305.** The apodoses of conditional sentences, when requiring the subjunctive active in direct speech [§§ 250 (b), 251], are represented in dependent statements by the future participle with or without *essē* (to represent the present or imperfect subjunctive) or with *fūissē* (to represent the pluperfect subjunctive); and when requiring the subjunctive passive in direct speech, are represented in dependent statements by *fōrē* (or *fūtūrum essē*) *ūt* with the imperfect subjunctive (to represent the present or imperfect subjunctive) or *fūtūrum fūissē* *ūt* with the imperfect subjunctive (to represent the pluperfect subjunctive). *E.g.*,

(Dixit) *sē crēdītūrum essē, sī illē nēgārēt* (in direct speech, *crēdam, sī nēgēs*).

(Dixit) *sē crēdītūrum essē, sī illē nēgārēt* (in direct speech, *crēderem, sī nēgārēs*).

(Dixit) *sē crēdītūrum fūissē, sī illē nēgassēt* (in direct speech, *crēdidissem, sī nēgāvissēs*).

(Dixit) *fūtūrum fūissē ūt Scīpīō occīdērētūr, nī sī filiūs subvēnissēt* (in direct speech, *occīsūs essēt Scīpīō, nī sī filiūs subvēnissēt*).

**306.** The personal pronouns and possessive adjectives are used in dependent statements in Latin just as they are in English, except as explained in the next section.

**307.** When the introductory verb is in the third person, any pronoun or possessive adjective in the dependent statement referring to the subject of this introductory verb, whether singular or plural, is regularly rendered by the reflexive *sē, sūī, sibi*, or the possessive *sūūs*; and conversely, these pronouns and possessives refer to the subject of the introductory verb. *E.g.*,

*He said that he was seriously ill,*  
*dixit sē grāvītēr aegrōtārē.*

Here the speaker's actual words were (*ěgō*) *grāvītēr aegrōtō*.

NOTE 1.—When there can be no ambiguity, *sē*, *sūūs*, etc., may refer to the subject, not of the principal verb, but of the dependent clause.

NOTE 2.—*Ipsē* is to be used in dependent statements only when it would have been used in direct speech.

308. On the other hand, *īs*, *illē*, refer to some person other than the subject of the introductory verb. *E.g.*,

*He said that he (that other man) was seriously ill,*  
*dixit ēum (or illum) grāvītēr aegrōtārē.*

In this case the speaker's actual words were (*īs* or *illē*) *grāvītēr aegrōtāt*.

309. All subordinate clauses, of whatever class, are normally expressed in dependent statement by the subjunctive.

*Obs.*—For exceptions see § 309, Notes 3 and 4.

When the introductory verb is in a historic tense, the tenses used are as follows:—

Direct Statement.		Dependent Statement.
Indic. pres., imperf., fut.	}	Subjunctive imperfect.
Subj. pres., imperf.		
Indic. perf., pluperf., fut.-perf.	}	Subjunctive pluperfect.
Subj. perf., pluperf.		

NOTE 1.—If the introductory verb is in a primary tense, the same rules hold good, except that the present and future indicative and present subjunctive are represented by the present subjunctive, the perfect and future-perfect indicative and perfect subjunctive by the perfect subjunctive.

\*NOTE 2.—After an introductory verb in a historic tense the present subjunctive is occasionally found instead of the imperfect, and in Livy the perfect subjunctive in lieu of the pluperfect is a mannerism. Such exceptions are only allowed for the sake of greater vividness of narration.

\*NOTE 3.—*Dum* is occasionally found with the present indicative even in dependent statements. Relative clauses, when used with the indicative, stand, not as part of the statement or thought recorded, but as remarks added by the *writer* who reports. *E.g.*, *They* (i.e., *those who were present*) *were, he said, faithless, dixit ēōs, quī ādērant, perfīdōs essē*; the speaker's actual words being simply, *You are faithless*. If the direct speech had been, *Ye who are present are faithless, we should have had in the dependent statement, ēōs quī ādēssent*.



\*NOTE 4.—The verb in a short subordinate clause is occasionally put in the infinitive by assimilation. E.g., *And hence it could be perceived that the people were being roused just as the sea is disturbed by the violence of the winds, ex quō intelligī pōtuit, ūt mārē ventōrum vī āgītārī, sic pōpūlum concītārī.* Here āgītārī should be, strictly speaking, in the subjunctive. This is especially the case in short relative clauses where the relative is merely resumptive, i.e., used as explained in § 20.

310. A dependent command or prohibition is expressed by the subjunctive with (or sometimes without) ūt or with nē, except when the introductory verb is iūbēō or vētō (see §§ 106, 107).

311. A dependent question is always in the subjunctive (see §§ 226, 227).

312. The foregoing rules, so far as regards dependent statements, hold good for the report of a continuous speech in oratio obliqua; but they are subject to certain modifications in the case of questions and commands or prohibitions occurring in the course of such a speech. As continuous prose composition is beyond the scope of this book, a detailed treatment of the matter would be out of place here.

313. A dependent statement may be constructed with any word or phrase suggestive of thinking or declaring, except inquam (see § 104, NOTE 4). E.g.,

*Then the commons began to murmur: their slavery had become manifold, they said, and a hundred masters had been created in lieu of one,*

frēmērē (historic infinitive) dēindē plebs, multiplicātam servitūtem, centum prō ūnō dōmīnōs factōs.

*He sent a dispatch to the senate, to the effect that Veii would presently be in the hands of the Roman people, thanks to the favour of heaven,*

littērās ād sēnātum mīsīt, dēum immortālīum bēnignitātē Veiōs iam fōrē īn pōtestātē pōpūlī Rōmānī.

**314.** The subjunctive is frequently used in dependent clauses of direct speech to express the action of the clause not necessarily as a fact, but as it occurred to the mind of another. *E.g.*,

*Paetus made me a present of (what he described as) all the books his brother had left him,*

*Paetūs omnēs librōs, quōs frāter sūus relīquissēt, mīhi dōnāvīt.*

*Obs.*—The subjunctive gives Paetus' description of the books; had it been the writer's, *relīquerāt* would have been used. Cp. *quōd* with the subjunctive (§§ 271, 272).

**315.** In a clause dependent on an accusative and infinitive clause (or a simple infinitive) or on a dependent subjunctive, the mood used is regularly the subjunctive. (The latter usage is often called subjunctive by assimilation or attraction.) *E.g.*,

*Deceit wins for itself confidence in small matters, in order that, whenever it is worth while, it may cheat with great profit,*  
*fraus fidem in parvīs sibi praestrūit, ūt, cum ōpērae prētium sīt, cum mercēdē magnā fallāt.*

*Such was the solidity of the construction that, the stronger the rush of the water, the more firmly the construction was held together,*  
*tantā ērāt ōpēris firmitūdō ūt, quō māiōr vīs āquae sē incītāvissēt, hōc artīūs tēnērētūr.*

*NOTE.*—The indicative, however, is often used in a short relative clause which merely gives a definition, and is always used in a clause inserted by the writer for the information of his readers.

### 316. SYNOPSIS VIEW OF CONJUNCTIONS FOLLOWED BY THE INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

#### INDICATIVE.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Subject and object clauses (§§ 232-247)—

*quōd.*

*ūt, nē, ūt nōn.*

*quōmīnūs, nē, quīn.*

semi-dependent subjunctive  
 without particle (§ 243).

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Conditional (§§ 248-259)—

- |                                    |  |                           |
|------------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| (i.) Truth or falsity not implied. |  | (iii.) Future unemphatic. |
| (ii.) Future vivid.                |  | (iv.) Falsity implied.    |

sī, ētīamsī.  
 sīvē (seu) . . . sīvē (seu) . . .  
 quōd sī.  
 sī nōn, nīsī, nī, sīn, sī mīnūs.

## Concessive (§§ 260-264)—

	etsī. ētīamsī.	
tāmetsī. quamquam.		quamvīs. licēt. ūt, nē. cum.

## \*Comparative (§§ 265-268)—

ūt, tamquam. (nōn) sēcūs āc. quōmōdō, quemadmōdum. cūiusmōdī. quam. pērindē āc, prōindē āc. ītā . . . ūt; sīc . . . ūt. ēō . . . quō; tantō . . . quantō. quantūs, quālīs, quōt.		ūt sī, tamquam sī. vēlūt sī, quāsī. āc sī.  quam sī. pērindē āc sī, prōindē āc sī.  quam, pōtīūs quam (ūt) (§ 239).
--	--	---

## Causal (§§ 269-274)—

	quōd, proptēreā quōd. quīā.	
quōnīam. quandō. quandōquīdem.		nōn quōd, nōn quīā. nōn quō. cum. quī, ūbi, undē, etc. quippē quī, ūt quī, ntpōtē quī.

## Final (§§ 275-279)—

ūt, nē, ūt nē.  
 quō.  
 quī, ūbi, undē, etc.  
 nē quīs, nēcūbi,  
     nēcundē, nē quandō.  
 nēdum.

## Consecutive (§§ 280-286)—

adēo	}	.. ūt, ūt nōn, ūt nullūs, ūt nēmō, ūt nusquam, etc.
sic		
itā		
tam		
is		

is ..... quī.  
 ibi, eō .... ūbi, quō.  
 indē ..... undē.

## Temporal (§§ 287-294)—

cum.  
 antequam, priusquam.  
 dum.  
 donec, quoad.

ut, ubi.  
 quoties.  
 quancumque.  
 postquam, posteaquam.  
 simul ac (atque), simul.

dummodo, modo.  
 dummodo ne, modo ne.  
 tantum, tantum ne.

## APPENDIX I.

ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES IN A  
LATIN PROSE SENTENCE.

**317.** The grammatical relation which exists between the parts of a sentence is shewn in English mainly by the order of the words; in Latin the extensive use of inflexions leaves the position to be assigned to each word to a certain extent optional. Thus, the meaning of "Caesar defeated the Nervii" may be expressed indifferently (save in the matter of emphasis) by **Caesār Nervīōs vīcīt**, or **Vīcīt Nervīōs Caesār**, or **Nervīōs vīcīt Caesār**, etc.; whereas if in English the order be changed to "The Nervii defeated Caesar" the meaning is entirely different. There is, nevertheless, a certain normal order in the arrangement of a Latin sentence, and a deviation from it gives prominence to the word that is drawn from its natural position.

**318.** Practice is the best guide as to how far the normal order of the words should be varied for the sake of emphasis; but a few rules are given further on. The following sections deal with the arrangement of words in comparatively short sentences; long periods do not fall within the scope of this book.

**319. Simple Sentences.** If we regard every simple sentence as consisting of subject and predicate, the rule will be: Put the **subject first**, the **finite verb last**. This

leaves the rest of the predicate (object, complement, etc.) for the middle of the sentence. *E.g.*,

*Boadicea took London by storm,*  
**Boudiccā Londīnium expugnāvīt.**

*The duck will become a swan,*  
**ānās cygnūs fiēt.**

320. When a verb has two objects, the indirect object generally precedes the direct. *E.g.*,

*I thank my colleague,*  
**collēgae grātiam rēfērō.**

321. An attribute, whether adjective, substantive in apposition, genitive, or adjectival phrase, is usually placed immediately after the substantive to which it refers. But an adjective of quantity or a numeral more usually precedes the substantive of which it is the attribute. *E.g.*,

*Many are turned aside from rectitude by their corrupt nature,*  
**multōs ā rectā rātiōnē nātūrā vītiosā dētorquēt.**

*Very many Romans perished,*  
**plūrīmī Rōmānī pēriērunt.**

*Obs.*—Such an arrangement of two pairs of words as in the first example above, where the words in the first pair (*rectā rātiōnē*) are in the reverse order to those in the second pair (*nātūrā vītiosā*) is known as *chiasmus*, or crosswise position, from the shape of the Greek letter X (*Chi*). This is extremely common.

*NOTE.*—When an adjective and one or more other attributes (such as a genitive, or an adjectival phrase consisting of a substantive or pronoun preceded by a preposition) are applied to a single substantive, the adjective usually stands first, and a genitive precedes a substantive or pronoun with a preposition. *E.g.*, *Remember Aeneas' renowned dutifulness,* **illam praeclāram Aenēae piētatem mēmentō**; *I value highly Caesar's goodwill towards me,* **Caesārīs ergā mē bēnēvolentiām magnī aestimō.**

322. A preposition precedes its case, except *tēnūs* (§ 151), *versūs*, and the enclitic *cum* (§ 20, NOTE 3). An attribute may intervene.

*The Senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in accordance with the dignity of the Roman people,*  
**sēnātūs dūōvīrōs ād ēām aedem prō amplītūdinē pōpūli Rōmānī faciendam crēārī iussīt.**

323. An adverb (if not interrogative or relative) is placed before (usually immediately before) the verb or adjective it qualifies; as also is an ablative case or other equivalent to an adverb. *E.g.*,

*They were seeking his friendship both in public and in private,*  
*amicitiām eiūs publicē privātimquē pētebant.*

*They attempted with their utmost force to make a sally from several*  
*gates,*  
*ēruptiōnem plūribūs portīs faciēre summā vī cōnābantūr.*

*He is a man most devoted to oratory,*  
*vīr est eloquentiāe valdē studiōsus.*

*Obs.*—The negatives *nōn*, *haud*, and *nēc* (*nequē*) follow this rule.

324. An interrogative or relative adjective or adverb stands first in its clause. *E.g.*,

*Is there any help in you?*  
*ecquid auxiliū in vōbīs est?*

*On hearing this, he immediately sets out,*  
*quibūs rēbūs audītis, stātim prōficiscitūr.*

*Obs.*—The use of a relative in Latin in place of an English demonstrative in sentences such as the above is to be imitated.

325. A complex sentence (§ 212) often runs to a considerable length in Latin, but it is only with comparatively short ones that this book has to do. The general tendency in Latin is to place the subordinate clause, unless it denotes a consequence (§ 280), at or near the beginning of the principal sentence. *E.g.*,

*I shall be glad if you do it,*  
*sī id faciēs, gaudēbō.*

*They advanced until it began to grow dark,*  
*dōnēc vespescēbāt prōgrediēbantūr.*

*The Stoics are like them, for they place the highest good in virtue only,*  
*Stoici, quōd finem bonōrum in virtutē unā pōnunt, similes sunt*  
*eōrum.*

*And hence it follows that pleasure is not the highest good,*  
*ex quō efficitūr ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum.*

*Lat. Comp.*

The following example will shew that (1) a sediment of verbs (finite or infinitive) must be avoided, (2) the position of the dependent clause must be regulated by the sense, (3) the subject should form part of the principal sentence:—

*Fearing that the soldiers might be unable to withstand the enemy's charge, Caesar instructed his lieutenant not to give battle,*  
**Caesar, vēritūs nē hostīum impētum milītēs sustīnērē nōn possent, lēgātō praecēpīt nē proelīum committērēt.**

*Obs. 1.*—In the above, such a collocation as **sustīnērē nōn possent vēritūs** or **committērēt praecēpīt** would be harsh.

*Obs. 2.*—A more idiomatic form of the sentence would be; “Caesar feared that the soldiers might be unable to withstand the enemy's charge, and therefore instructed his lieutenant not to give battle.” Accordingly, when an English sentence consisting of two coordinate clauses is to be put into Latin, the less important clause should be made subordinate by the use of a participle, or of a conjunction such as *ūt, nē, cum*, or of a relative.

**326.** It must be borne in mind that the above rules are merely intended as a guide for beginners in the construction of short sentences. In the Latin classics the normal order of the words is frequently disturbed by a desire for emphasis, euphony, or other effect.

**327.** The two emphatic places in a sentence are the beginning and the end. The verb gains stress by being placed at the beginning, the subject by being transferred to the end; any other word becomes emphatic in either of these positions. *E.g.,*

*I was much affected by your speech,*  
**mōvīt mē ōrātiō tūā.**

*What would Socrates have said about this?*  
**quid dē hīs rēbūs dixissēt Sōcrātēs?**

*It is the highest mountains that the lightnings strike,*  
**summōs montēs fulminā fērīunt.**

*After following another leader, the one you will now follow is Camillus,*  
**sēcūtī āliū dūcem, sēquēmīnī nunc Cāmillum.**



323. The following words cannot stand first in a sentence:—

1. The enclitic -ně (§ 223, *Obs.* 2).
2. The enclitics -quē, -vē. (These are attached to the word which their English equivalent precedes: e.g., *Wife and children*, *uxōr libērīquē*; *More or less*, *plūs mīnusvē*).
3. The words *autem*, *ēnīm*, *quīdem*, *quōquē*, *vērō*. (These usually stand second.)

## APPENDIX II.

### ON THE RENDERING OF ENGLISH ABSTRACT EXPRESSIONS.

329. A literal rendering into Latin of an English abstract expression must generally be avoided. The corresponding concrete phrase will readily suggest itself: thus, "To commit a murder" becomes *hōmīnem interficēre*; "To be in a commotion," *commōvērī*; "It was done on the authority of the Senate," *patrēs auctōrēs ērant*.

330. An English abstract noun may be replaced by (a) an infinitive (§ 101, *Obs.*), (b) a gerund (§§ 91, *Obs.*, and 92), (c) a past participle (§ 81, *NOTE* 3), (d) a clause with a concrete subject, (e) an impersonal passive (§ 76, *NOTE*).

- (a) *Defeat is disgraceful*, *turpē est vincī*.
- (b) *The art of speech*, *ars lōquendī*.
- (c) *After the rout of the Boii*, *post fūsōs Bōiōs*.
- (d) *I am not sure about either the nature or the characteristics of God*, *nēc quīd sīt dēūs nēc quālīs, sātīs sciō*.
- (e) *There is a cry*, *conclāmātūr*.



# LATIN EXERCISES.

---

## EXERCISE I.

### A.

1. Londinium was a colony of the Romans.
2. Boadicea, Queen of the Iceni, stormed the town of Londinium.
3. Paulinus defeated Boadicea, Queen of the Iceni.
4. Boadicea was defeated by Paulinus, the leader of the Romans.
5. We admire such a brave woman as Boadicea.
6. Very many of the Romans had been slain.
7. The Romans subdued the whole of the island.
8. I will help you who are learning to write Latin.
9. Horace became a clerk.
10. Horace is considered a good poet.
11. I consider Horace a very good poet.
12. Both you and I will read Horace's poems.
13. You, Publius, and your sister have cheered your poor father and mother.
14. My father and mother are dead.
15. Neither you nor I reached the top of the mountain.

### B.

16. There is a definite limit of every period of life, definite pursuits of boyhood.
17. This is that which Solon used to answer.

18. The fruit of old age is its recollection and store of good things formerly gained.

19. I indeed know this for certain; ye it is who altogether ignore it.

20. And he who affirms this is very much mistaken; he who denies it thinks aright.

21. Rightly indeed do men call you happy, Cyrus.

22. There are few good men, many bad ones.

23. Lucius and Gaius, the consuls, have captured the town of Falerii, the strongest fortress of Etruria.

24. The third portion is inhabited by those (*turn by active voice*) who are called in our language Gauls.

25. Both I and you have always pursued what we consider to be best.

26. Rank, fame, and riches seem dear to all.

27. He shall be consul whom ye have elected by your votes, Quirites.

28. You have sent a slave as a messenger to us who are honourable and free-born men.

29. He dies best whose life has been most upright.

30. You are the man whom all we citizens of Rome love.

### C.

31. Your excellent father used very often to present to his friends the most handsome gifts which he possessed.

32. Our ancestors named Fabius their dictator, Cato their censor, many men their consuls; Cicero only did they name "Father of his country."

33. Those whom the crowd consider most fortunate have rarely seemed either happy or virtuous to philosophers.

34. The Roman Senate and people expressed one and the same opinion.

35. Many men and women were slaughtered, and the enemy carried off the boys and girls in a body as slaves.

36. We had never heard before of so great a calamity.
37. The lightnings, says Horace, strike the tops of the mountains.
38. To me, at least, it seemed that you were a prudent man.
39. It seems that I am of all men the most unhappy, and that you are in reality better men.
40. The enemy are even now about to besiege you who are talking of peace.
41. Neither expense nor display has pleasures for me, who am a poor man.
42. Both you and I, and in short all men, consider each his own opinion to be right.
43. He orders Titus Labienus his lieutenant to ascend to the top of the ridge with two legions.
44. The Helvetii began to harass the rear-guard (*say* the last of the line).
45. He made a long speech in the middle of the forum.

## EXERCISE II.

## A.

1. Beware of that wicked man who envies you.
2. All men consider Cicero eloquent.
3. Scipio came to his father's assistance.
4. Pity him who has been condemned to death.
5. Pardon your enemies, help your friends.
6. He told me many things, and asked me for money.
7. Obey him who governs the State.
8. I enjoy the food I eat.
9. Wild beasts, relying on their strength, get possession of their prey.
10. He who enjoys (*say* uses) good health can perform his duty.
11. Pay me what I ask.

12. Set me free, and I will go out of this city.
13. He was like his father, and capable of enduring toil.
14. Remember ye my kindnesses; forget your wrongs.
15. Many envied me; no one thanked me.

## B.

16. By this time the guides of the army had crossed the river Sequana, and were approaching the most uneven parts of the ridge.

17. The whole of the speech savours of an almost childish teaching and practice.

18. He chose the most notable men there were as senators, and set them over public affairs.

19. This Ascanius, whom the Julian family considers the originator of its name, was also called Iulus.

20. He kept reminding one of his poverty, another of his greed, many of their peril or their disgrace.

21. The king was sorry for his action. He begged peace and pardon of the Senate.

22. All of us who have pity for the Roman name will withstand the enemy.

23. Laelius teaches those who use friendship aright to remember kindnesses and forget wrongs.

24. Even our Consul, good man that he is, has been accused of extortion and condemned to death.

25. He was capable of enduring heat and cold alike, eager for fame, prodigal of his private property, competent for command.

26. In what respect is this speech of mine like that poem?

27. You pardon the guilty, and yet are vexed with the innocent.

28. Romulus was by this time not dissatisfied with his resources.

29. The army was led across the Ciminian forest.

30. Death has carried off the citizen whom we considered most fit for command.

## C.

31. He conceals his doings from his father.

32. Riding lately past the house, I saw women weeping bitterly.

33. Every exile remembers his own fatherland.

34. Wisdom oftentimes heals the wretched.

35. Why do you call a friend the man who is worthy only of hate, an enemy him who has always helped and will help you?

36. Why do we not at once condemn to death the man whom we all charge with an unspeakable crime?

37. The herdsmen were menacing a stranger accused of a palpable murder, threatening him with death.

38. The State needs another leader like Caesar, unlike Pompeius.

39. So, relying upon the gods who aid us well, let us go to meet this most troublesome foe.

40. The hail has harmed the vines, nor have the showers spared the roses.

41. These apples excel the others both in fragrance and in sweetness.

42. I wish neither to desert the Commonwealth, nor to survive it.

43. Cicero excels the rest of the Romans in eloquence, Cato in valour.

44. I will supply the material and the things which are needed (*use opus*).

45. Relying on (your) valour and strength, citizens, resist the despot.

## EXERCISE III.

## A.

1. You ought to have trusted me.

2. There was a shout from the whole line.
3. As far as (*say* what) I am concerned, you may go.
4. The women and children will be spared.
5. It is better to be exiled than to be killed.
6. He did not dare to oppose me.
7. It is thundering now ; soon it will rain.
8. I shall be quite disgusted with life.
9. It is to a surgeon's interest to live in a populous city.
10. I am ashamed of my deed, but it was much to my interest.

## B.

11. Have pity on these unhappy men who will soon be beaten, will become exiles, and will then most of them be killed.
12. Cicero was certainly exiled, yet he was but paying the penalty of murder.

13. I am ashamed of your ignorance and idleness.

14. To be acquitted of so serious a charge is both to my interest and to yours.

15. It very much concerns all the townsmen to support the Government.

16. It was very much to the interest of you all to annul this law.

17. One charged with arrogance and cruelty will not be spared, and he whom all dislike will now at last be punished.

18. The defendant has been released from his fetters, and his friends are congratulating him on his safety.

19. In the whole town there was panic and confusion and outcry.

20. Those whom it concerns will have to perform such a duty as this.

## C.

21. I have often warned you of the unhappiness of those who are most envied.

22. What have we not been wicked enough to dare? What are we to suffer? What misfortunes have we reached?



23. Those who rule ought to abstain from violence and to give way to mercy.

24. The very man who ought to be without none of the conveniences of life is in want of everything.

25. What you announce cannot possibly have happened, and you ought never to have announced it. It beseeemed you rather to be silent.

26. It was the king's ill fortune to have unwittingly slain his father.

27. It is our business to come unanimously to the help of the tottering state.

28. There could scarcely be a doubt of the guilt of the defendants. They were accordingly heavily fined and exiled.

29. They ought to have taken counsel for themselves when running the risk.

30. We should look carefully after everything which is needful.

#### EXERCISE IV.

##### A.

1. Caesar, having ascertained this, set out.
2. All must die.
3. You must come to my help.
4. He gained possession of the kingdom by conciliating the chief men.
5. A dictator was appointed for holding the elections.
6. The interests of the State must be consulted by all.
7. We think that you are fit to rule us.
8. I shall tell my father that I will go to see the games.
9. I hoped that you had been persuaded to go.
10. He promised to order the soldiers to remain.

##### B.

11. We must avoid this mistake. (*Turn to passive.*)

12. At present, Necessity must be yielded to. And who forbids even the boldest to yield to her?

13. Sextus meets the vessels as they draw near the island.

14. If you assist me well (*use abl. abs.*), it is probable that the affair will turn out most happily.

15. I will not go to be the servant of a despot.

16. As my brother is absent, I have commenced taking in hand the whole business.

17. I was more than usually glad on hearing this.

18. And, in my judgment, you ought not on any account to have allowed so disgraceful an act.

19. I moved forward to encourage them, and came upon my troops already fighting.

20. Wise men must curb the lust of pursuing their passions.  
(*Turn to passive.*)

### C.

21. It is in the highest degree the concern of all patriotic men to abandon other pursuits at this crisis, and to consult the interests of the State.

22. For you who love your lives there is an opportunity to escape at once into the town.

23. When the first regiment had been driven back and their baggage looted, the remainder of the army was stricken with terror and fled.

24. This party are come to beg for peace, others to secure the termination of the war even by surrender.

25. Caesar, having learnt this, thanked the Gaulish chieftains. The king he presented with the citizenship.

26. Having now performed every sacrifice duly, he went to meet the enemy with all speed.

27. When this news was reported to him, the commander broke up his camp, and, hurrying his column, proceeded to advance.

28. He placed his chief hope of conquering in being the first to seize this fortress.

29. Who will say that goodness is not to be preferred, wickedness to be accounted worse, by honest men ?

30. Caesar has written a despatch to the Senate in which he asserts that he came, saw, and conquered.

## EXERCISE V.

### A.

1. Cicero travelled from Rome to Cilicia.
2. Vergil died at Brundisium and was buried at Neapolis.
3. Pompey fled to Capua, thence to Epirus.
4. Milo having returned to Italy was slain by Pedius.
5. Most men esteem riches more highly than virtue.
6. I sold the book ten days ago for a hundred sestertii
7. Vergil is much more polished than Ennius.
8. He arrived home in three days.
9. In the middle of the city there is a wall ten feet high.
10. The tower is ten feet higher than the wall.

### B.

11. Being surrounded by the enemy, he was overwhelmed with missiles and stones.

12. The town of Victumulae was surrendered to Hannibal by Dasius for 400 gold pieces.

13. What other men value at the highest price he considered of small account.

14. It seems to me that you are far wiser than he, (but) that he is far more fortunate than you.

15. There are more men slaves to pleasure than to virtue.

16. In proportion as their position was more hopeless the Spartans fought on with greater spirit.

17. But if you prefer to stop at Rome, I will come to you at Rome in person from this place.

18. He fled from Syracuse, the most populous town in Sicily, to the neighbouring hamlet of Casmenae; and died at Agrigentum.

19. At Carthage the fortifications of the citadel were forty-five feet in height, and of a thickness of six feet.

20. The camp is twenty-three miles from Athens.

### C.

21. In the middle of the city of Thebes is the citadel, which they called the Cadmea.

22. The Laedaemonians seized it when marching from Laconia to Thessaly.

23. The more a thing costs men, the more it is valued by them.

24. I intend to stay at Arpi for three days. From here I shall go to Aquinum, where I am to sup at Varus' house.

25. It is said that, when a great disaster overhung the Romans, the statue of a goddess at Caere broke into a sweat, and the lots shrank.

26. What are we to do if we stay at home? For myself I prefer to meet death in battle for my country's sake rather than await here the slavery which is impending.

27. In this year more than twenty men were killed by the fall of a house at Fidenae.

28. He lived while still a young man with his uncle in the colony of Ariminum. From that place he suddenly set out for Arpi by the coast-road, and was for a long time missed by his people. He was found at last in Apulia, when an old man, by his relatives.

29. Nearly twenty years ago in this very temple I said that for a man who had been consul death could not be premature.

30. The soldiers, protected on the right hand and on the left by a wall, bring up without danger whatever things are needed.

## EXERCISE VI.

## A.

1. Bad companions are the ruin of many.
2. I find nothing witty in your poems.
3. Pompeius' army was a help to Sulla.
4. He did his duty with diligence.
5. The king of Sparta was lame in one foot.
6. It is a general's business to avenge wrongs done to citizens.
7. Your father is a man of integrity.
8. He sent a messenger to Caesar in haste.
9. Horace after being (*say from*) a clerk became a poet.
10. It is said that Marcus gave his daughter the name of India.

## B.

11. Vergil's surname was Maro.
12. The general was a man of the greatest genius and remarkable foresight.
13. Gelo refused to come to the aid of the Athenians when they were at war with the Persians.
14. To the Gauls their shields when transfixed by the Romans' javelins were a great hindrance.
15. The Boii, who served as (*say were*) a guard for those in the rear, began to attack our men.
16. Those who survived that battle travelled the whole night without stopping.
17. Those who had been left as a guard over against our camp went to their comrades' assistance.
18. Two youths of the highest promise obey the king against their will.

19. He promises money to the chief men, but to the State the rule over the whole province.

20. Caesar, having left two legions (*abst. ab.*) as a garrison, followed the enemy.

### C.

21. They attempted with great violence to make a sally from the town by several gates.

22. He glutted himself with the blood of citizens most unlike himself.

23. For what is less like, I do not say an orator, but a man, than to repeat such statements?

24. He wanted time to be left for the fortification of the camp.

25. They asked to be allowed to announce for a fixed day an assembly of the whole of Gaul.

26. That is an old saying of the English that a bird in the hand is worth more than two in the bush.

27. Who would believe that a Roman consul like him would be accused of so serious a charge? Still we see that he has been impeached.

28. It is the mark of children easily to alter their purpose; it is old men's way to ponder long before they are willing to handle even the slightest undertakings.

29. What do you want with a sword? It is the fashion of Gauls, not of Romans, to wear weapons in a public place.

30. Another crowd, mostly of the poorer class, which so small a hill could not maintain in such a dearth of provisions, poured forth from the city and made for Janiculum as it were in one column.

## EXERCISE VII.

### A.

1. He sailed from Spain to Britain.

2. Many Gauls live on this side of the Padus.

3. He led the army across the river as far as the mound.
4. I was standing with my brother before the judges.
5. He acted with (*say used*) the greatest kindness towards his parents.

## B.

6. Thus to impiety towards the gods he added wrongs against men.
7. They slay them all except Turpilius in the course of the banquet.
8. We cannot be the better or the happier for that knowledge.
9. As far as I am concerned, let all the culprits be dragged by the feet.
10. He could not speak for sorrow.

## C.

11. Below Saturn's star, nearer to the earth, travels the star of Jupiter.
12. Within twenty days, after accomplishing great things, he resigned the dictatorship.
13. They advance on to uneven ground, and approach the foot of the hill on which the town of Herda was situated.
14. Then their sorrow being suddenly turned to wrath, they fly to arms.
15. This place is about fifteen miles from Rome.

## EXERCISE VIII.

## A.

1. Which of you pitied us?
2. Does any one believe this fellow?
3. These strive to defend themselves with javelins, those with stones.
4. Neither you nor I will yield to any one.

5. He went away to his father's house without any delay.
6. He is more distinguished than any of his colleagues.
7. I told this to several people, and no one believed it.
8. All the bravest men fought as fiercely as possible.
9. I met his father and some slaves.
10. One is more daring than prudent, the other inactive rather than cautious.
11. Which of the Consuls will remain at Rome?
12. When will your letter be delivered to him?
13. Some desire one thing, others another.
14. Scarcely any one believes such a man as this.
15. War delights me, you wish for peace.

## B.

16. Which of you knows not my longing for you?
17. Envy of us was the cause of so cruel a punishment of all our friends.
18. He said that the messenger had already gone; he promised that he would however follow him at once.
19. You know you have been more forgetful of yourself than was right.
20. The proposition angered senate and people alike; to the latter it seemed too haughty, to the former scarcely honourable.
21. The same plan had suggested itself to your minds and to my own.
22. Some readily break out into vice through their own disposition, others against their will.
23. At that great crisis no good citizen failed to act for (*say* did not help) the welfare of all.
24. I thought that so intimate and honourable a friend as he ought to be assisted with all my powers.
25. Each of the two leaders admired the other, one think-



ing that he had an enemy like himself, the other that he (had one) such as (he had) never (had) before.

26. They receive Horatius with the greater joy in that their fortunes had been nearer peril.

27. When the three Albans had been already wounded (*use abl. abs.*), two of the Romans fell one over the other.

28. Thus two leading men built up the state, the former by war, the latter by peace.

29. Who fears such a leader as this? Unless perchance some one thinks that the more unwarlike enemies are, the more they are to be feared.

30. Some one told me that that was easy for any one to do.

### C.

31. Some said that the gods take no part in human affairs; others on the contrary that everything is done by the divine providence.

32. Scarcely a single man was willing to pardon this fellow when condemned of so serious a crime.

33. Do you suppose that any other way of safety can be discovered, fellow-citizens?

34. Either satisfies me; and now the latter, now the former, seems more likely, and nothing else seems likely.

35. But who, trained and brought up in a respectable household, is not shocked at the very (thought of) baseness?

36. If it is anyone's object to aim in some direction a spear or an arrow, all his skill must be employed.

37. Some other reward must be found, (and) pleasure must be left for the lower animals.

38. The storm broke down in a single day both the bridges which C. Fabius had made.

39. Who claims for himself as a meritorious deed that which any one may do with ease?

40. And no one man of another race excels so much in that art as all the Baliares excel (*say* excel among) other men.

41. He treated innocent men more cruelly than any one else before.

42. Which party ought to rule the other? For they can no longer both rule together. Nevertheless neither party will yield to the other.

43. The art is great and fruitful rather than difficult and obscure.

44. I should have been content with any one of those things.

45. I am as much a friend of the Commonwealth as any one.

### EXERCISE IX.

#### A.

1. Three hundred and fifty seamen perished.

2. Twenty-one ships were sunk by that storm.

3. Two thousand four hundred men were slain, and two camps taken.

4. I promise to give twenty-one girls three books each.

5. I have asked this man three times for ten sestertii.

6. Married women used to worship Mars on the first of March.

7. Vespasian was made emperor on the first of July.

8. From the 3rd of March to the 31st, I remained at home.

9. I have received a letter dated the 30th of November.

10. Caesar, beware the Ides of March.

11. Some one has given me ten thousand sesterces.

12. Forty million sesterces were paid into the treasury.

13. His country house was sold for four million sesterces.

14. Interest had from 4 per cent. risen to (*say* become) 8 per cent.

15. I am heir to one-sixth of my brother's property.

## B.

16. In the next three months it is said that more than 160,000 victims were sacrificed.

17. When evening was now approaching, 1000 horse were sent on by a shorter way with all possible despatch.

18. The hundred senators thus formed ten companies (*decuriae*), and appointed one to be chief of each company.

19. There is a tale that, having been exiled from Corinth to Tarquinii for sedition in the reign of Ancus Marcius at Rome, he died 27 years after.

20. He held a levy throughout the whole province and added as many again to the numbers of the auxiliary troops.

21. To maintain the horses, widows paid 2000 sesterces a year.

22. Caius Caesar was born on the 31st of August, when his father and Fonteius were consuls.

23. He held his second consulship from January 1st for 30 days.

24. The conspirators awaited his coming about the seventh hour, on June 16th.

25. Men declared that by the first of the two prodigies danger was portended for their master.

26. He lived twenty-nine years, and was emperor three years and ten months.

27. Trebatius has sold all his property for 60,000,000 sesterces.

28. Between April 2nd and August 12th he spent 2,700,000 sesterces.

29. I have put 700,000 sesterces in the bank at four per cent. per annum.

30. One of the villas is on sale for 960,000 sesterces, the other for twice that amount.

## C.

31. Fourteen years ago I was quaestor in Sicily, before the praetorship of Verres.

32. In the same year was consecrated the temple of Castor on the 15th of July.

33. There is a large supply of money at 6 per cent.

34. For the past 500 years all power has been in the hands of the senate.

35. L. Catilina was born of noble parentage forty-five years ago.

36. They had collected to one spot every ship there was anywhere.

37. There are two sorts of generosity; the one that of conferring, the other that of repaying a kindness.

38. He bestowed upon the supporters of his design the rank which each deserved.

39. It is a fool's way to put off till to-morrow what ought to be done to-day.

40. The second view is that which limits friendship by equality of obligations and wishes.

41. One hundred million sesterces will be left him by will.

42. A promissory note (*syngrapha*) for (*use gen.*) ten million sesterces was executed by means of the envoys.

43. I want to be at Gabii until the sixth of May.

44. The senate made this decree on the seventh of January.

45. Five million nine hundred and eighty-four thousand and seventy-two citizens were counted.

## EXERCISE X.

## A.

1. Horatius did not yield before the bridge had fallen.

2. It was usually said that the Romans spared the conquered.

3. Cato was not for sparing Carthage.
4. The Romans have not spared Carthage.
5. When I arrive in Rome I will visit your father.
6. While these preparations were being made (*say* While these things were being prepared), the enemy were blockading the city.
7. He had for a long time been advising me to flee.
8. Scipio died in the twentieth year after he had conquered Hannibal.
9. Hannibal, after he had been defeated at Zama, gave his attention to civil affairs.
10. When I have read this book, I shall read it through again.

## B.

11. If you imitate Cicero, you will soon learn to write Latin.
12. By the time you are reading this, I perchance shall have met him.
13. For myself I am, and have long been, eager to visit Alexandria.
14. For years Sulla had threatened that he would one day restore the senate to power.
15. I have for some time thought this duty unworthy of you.
16. While this was going on in Spain, Trebonius began to attack Massilia.
17. Meanwhile the money demanded was being exacted with great severity throughout the province.
18. These men were, on account of their valour, very popular (*say* were held dear) in the army.
19. When you arrive at the top of the mountain, look around.
20. He heard the shouting of the soldiers whom the king had left in the town.

## C.

21. After placing on shipboard two thousand men whom he considered the most suitable for this undertaking, he arrived at Pelusium.

22. This same thing had befallen Lentulus, who had been consul in the previous year.

23. Pompeius, fearing an ambush because these things had turned out better than he had hoped (*say* beyond hope), for some time did not dare to approach the fortifications.

24. It will be more easily understood that foresight for men has been exercised (*say* it has been foreseen for men) by the immortal gods, if the whole build of a man is considered.

25. Then said Cotta, courteously as was his wont, "I do not think your argument sufficiently strong."

26. Diogenes was wont to say that Harpalus, who was considered a fortunate robber, bore witness against the gods.

27. The prosperous circumstances of the wicked disprove, as Diogenes used to say, all the power of the gods.

28. When the time for the exhibition had come, then, on the signal being given, the young Romans carried off the maidens.

29. Many have squandered their patrimony by lavish munificence.

30. The foe did not come down to the level ground ere the Romans advanced, prompted by their desire to regain their citadel.

## EXERCISE XI.

## A.

1. Do not conceal these things from your father.
2. Would that Carthage had not been destroyed !
3. You can escape, but what are we to do ?
4. You would not dare attempt such a crime.
5. You should not consult your own interests only.

## B.

6. O that no offspring (*say* nothing) had afterwards been born from that same mother !

7. When I saw this, what was I to do ?

8. What are we to answer, being found guilty of bribery ?

9. No one may lead an army against his country.

10. Money ought to have been given to these states in return for corn.

## C.

11. O that I might use another's lips (*say* mouth), just as I am about to use another's words !

12. If only we did not of our own accord ruin the characters of our own children !

13. What was I to say ? What was I to think ? Heaven preserve me as I knew not at all !

14. Let us free ourselves from the fetters of this servitude, and break its bars.

15. Let nothing be done save as we wish and as is right.

## EXERCISE XII.

## A.

1. I have persuaded my brother to remain here.

2. I besought the general to spare the city.

3. The soldiers were ordered to pitch a camp.

4. Would that they had striven more keenly to take the town !

5. I have for some time been enquiring when Caesar will come to Rome.

## B.

6. He had ordered me not to go away without his orders.

7. Caesar ordered the envoys to be brought to him.

8. You ought to advise him to flee as quickly as possible.

9. You ought to have advised him to flee from Athens.
10. We will strive with all our might to drive off the foe.

## C.

11. On the one hand they besought their fathers, on the other their husbands, that fathers-in-law and sons-in-law would not defile themselves with impious bloodshed.

12. Ask him himself in what fashion I received him at Ariminum.

13. I asked on what day he had arrived at Agrigentum.

14. Nor does age prevent us from retaining our zeal for agriculture.

15. He has sent a slave to ask who has come.

## EXERCISE XIII.

## A.

1. Take care to return to Carthage, Regulus.
2. Do not forget this kind deed.
3. Every soldier must obey his general.
4. Every war must bereave many children of their fathers.
5. Take care not to run into danger, my son.

## B.

6. Take away from the Romans their terror, and stay their disgraceful flight.

7. Go to meet Hannibal, adorn your city, and hallow the day of his arrival.

8. Choose a good and just senator in place of a bad and wicked one.

9. Either abolish religion utterly, or consistently preserve it.

10. I am as much moved as you, Lucullus; and do not think me less human (*say* a man) than yourself.



## C.

11. Dare to say that you went to your father before (coming) to me.

12. Keep off from Europe, and withdraw from all Asia this side of Mount Taurus.

13. Forbear, then, to boast of good faith and your rights and, dropping this democratic language, speak like a despot and a foe.

14. "You appoint me," he says, "protector to Tullius. Let it be so."

15. Take heed, gentlemen of the jury, that there seem not to have been commenced a proscription of a new kind.

## EXERCISE XIV.

## A.

1. Does any one prefer Rome to Tibur?

2. When will you reach the camp at Pharsalus?

3. Why do we delay? Why do we not mount our horses?

4. Is that your fault or ours?

5. I want to know what you were doing.

6. He said he had not asked why you were absent.

7. I do not know whether my brother is here or not.

8. I will ask whether our general has fought a battle.

9. I am inclined to believe that Rome was really taken by the Gauls.

10. Some one said that Caesar was coming.

## B.

11. For my part I rather think we ought to believe them when they say no.

12. That speech has certainly some sort of weight.

13. Do we hesitate to make a treaty rather than suffer our lands to be ravaged ?

14. Do you know that I am speaking about things very well known to myself ?

15. What difference does it make whether I wished it to be done or rejoice that it has been done ?

16. Is there any help in you ?

17. Do you recollect my maintaining in the Senate that our allies must be assisted without delay ?

18. Surely he cannot lay aside so soon the remembrance of recent wrongs ?

19. Why not mount our horses and see with speed what is the character of each ?

20. Do you think that this has happened by our fault or your own ?

### C.

21. The envoys were dismissed rudely, while many kept asking whether they had opened a place of refuge for women also.

22. I rather fancy you have more influence with the Senate than any other of my friends.

23. I shall perchance be despised by you, but that is of small concern to me.

24. You may perhaps ask what that mistake of yours was.

25. Will you never understand that you must determine whether those men are murderers or maintainers of liberty

26. What was the reason why you did not follow Caesar into Africa ?

27. What place can there be for you in laws and law-courts ?

28. I ask in the next place whether you do not know what to-day is.

29. Is it not, therefore, better to die a thousand deaths

than to be unable to live in one's own country without a body-guard of armed men?

30. Is there any one who either wished it not to be done, or disapproved of it when done?

## EXERCISE XV.

### A.

1. I fear the Gauls will take the city.
2. The Senate determined that a dictator should be appointed.
3. I do not doubt that Rome was surrendered to Porsenna.
4. Caesar caused the ships to be repaired.
5. Nothing prevents your coming to our aid.
6. I fear you cannot defend the city.
7. He contracted to have a temple built.
8. I was glad that you were present.
9. It happened that I had met his slave.
10. He contrived that no one should be hurt.

### B.

11. He saw that all things that were necessary were supplied to me.
12. It happened that on one night all the statues were thrown down.
13. I had determined to remain at Aquinum on the first of the month.
14. It is a friend's part to contrive to rouse his friend's prostrate spirit.
15. Caesar determined to wage war with the Germans.
16. I will write something, rather than bring it about that no letter is delivered.
17. I should like you to make haste to write me an answer.
18. Fearing that the soldiers might be unable to withstand

the enemy's charge, Caesar instructed his lieutenant not to give battle.

19. The wind has prevented my sailing from Brundisium for Epirus.

20. Those two things, Crassus, I fear I cannot grant you.

C.

21. Some one or other warned me not to conceal from you any longer so serious a misdeed as this.

22. As for your writing that you are daily more esteemed by Caesar, I am extremely glad.

23. I could wish you had bidden such treacherous citizens leave the town and begone into exile.

24. The state of the case forbids our wondering that he was also to his own family just such as he was to his allies.

25. It is said that he was very near killing his own father.

26. As to what you write with regard to being a candidate for the magistracy, it is no concern of mine to nominate or to support any one.

27. That the letter should be publicly read out was with difficulty obtained of them after (*say* with) great dispute.

28. Scarcely a day passes but this fellow comes to my house with his servants.

29. The praetor announced at the meeting on what day he would accept a tender for (*say* give out on contract) supplying corn to the army in Spain.

30. I could not but send you the most faithful messenger I had.

EXERCISE XVI.

A.

1. Had I been informed of this, I would have remained at Corinth.

2. If you were to deny this, you would be laughed at.

3. No one would be willing to read this book through if it were half as large again (*say* greater by half).
4. Whether this is true or false, I do not know.
5. This, whether true or false, does not affect me.
6. If you stay at home, you will seem indolent.
7. Have you heard if our army has conquered?
8. Had you been there, you could have saved your friend.
9. No one would be willing to buy this house at such a price.
10. I shall return home if I do not see you at Athens.

## B.

11. If we will win friendships, we must pay attention to goodness.

12. Here indeed, unless, as it is said, you should see (a man's) breast open and display your own, you would consider nothing to be trustworthy.

13. If your parents feared and hated you, you would, I imagine, retire to some place out of their sight.

14. Then let them be still; or if they stay on in the city and in the same mind, let them look for what they deserve.

15. If Catilina falls, the Commonwealth will be saved.

16. You would be saying something worthy of a great philosopher, if you felt that to be good which is worthiest of a man.

17. Even supposing you had robbed Sulla of nothing else but his consulship, yet you should have been satisfied with that.

18. There will occasionally be need of trickery and cheating, though such things are not at all to be recommended.

19. The senators were seized with panic for the entire State (*use active construction*), as though the enemy were already in sight.

20. Were I to deny that I am afflicted with regret for Scipio, I should certainly tell a lie.

## C.

21. As if it could in any wise happen that any man should love another more than himself !

22. If anywhere a struggle arose, they fought with their shields rather than with their swords (*use historic present*).

23. Either some god, or nature, or the situation of the place, has deprived the Cimmerii of the sight of the sun.

24. Let us therefore revert to this first, if it seems (good) to you ; or if you wish anything else, (we will attend to that) afterwards.

25. If groaning will avail to strengthen the mind in pain, we will employ it.

26. You shall pay the penalty for this crime, whether committed heedlessly or intentionally.

27. If, when I had given so much attention to philosophy, I were nevertheless unable to endure pain, it would be sufficient argument that pain is an evil.

28. It makes a very great difference whether wrong is done under the influence of some mental emotion or on purpose.

29. If death were feared, Brutus would not have fallen in battle while preventing the despot, whom he had himself driven out, from returning.

30. If enjoyment of life is hindered by the more serious diseases of the body, how much more must it be hindered by diseases of the mind !

## EXERCISE XVII.

## A.

1. I sent a slave to you to announce his death.

2. He mounted a horse in order to arrive the sooner.

3. The king lay hid in an oak, so that the soldiers did not see him.

4. It was already growing light when I was going to bed.
5. He would not go away before he saw me.
6. The king has hidden himself in an oak in order that he may not be seen by the soldiers.
7. I think that Caesar will demand hostages of the Gauls.
8. As it was now light, I went down to the forum.
9. Since these things are so, I will depart straightway.
10. Caesar, although he was very powerful, would not be called king.
11. You ought to read the book through, long though it is.
12. It began to grow dark before I had finished the work.
13. I shall wait until the messenger returns.
14. They advanced until it began to grow dark.
15. I hoped that the Carthaginians would be defeated.

## B.

16. Even gladiators, when exhausted with wounds, send to their owners to ask what is their pleasure.
17. Yet I deem this such an accusation that there seems to me to be nothing more unworthy of a man.
18. Others on the contrary, as though a man's body did not exist, care for nothing except the mind.
19. The wise man has more to rejoice for than to be troubled with.
20. What is there which can be added to this, so that it may be better?
21. How many matters could one enumerate in which, if we follow words, not realities, we can accomplish nothing!
22. He is not so inexperienced as to believe that the Romans can be overthrown by his forces.
23. Negotiations for peace were begun, just as if they were willing to make satisfaction.
24. He speedily put the foe to flight, so that no one stood his ground to fight.

25. These only do they consider worthy men with whom to argue.

26. We perhaps had (*say*, there was to us) no one suitable to imitate.

27. Verily all men must hope for death, if it leads the soul to some place where it is to be eternal.

28. They took that act much more ill, as they had before been of a hostile disposition towards us.

29. This district also was included within the walls, lest at any time an enemy should have it for a citadel.

30. The man who obeys with grace seems in my judgment worthy himself to govern one day.

### C.

31. The Stoics are like them, for they place the limit of good in virtue only.

32. However, as it grows late and I have to get back to my villa, I shall say so much for the present.

33. On the day following he sent forward some cavalry in the morning in three divisions to follow up the fugitives.

34. They beg him to defend a guiltless man from the violence of his enemies, and to send into the state some one to govern it.

35. It is not my custom to speak against philosophers of that sort, not because I quite agree with them, but because my modesty prevents me. (*Turn last clause to passive.*)

36. This was the Romans' reason for destroying the town, that it might not always be a retreat for their enemies.

37. With such speed and such a charge did the troops advance, though their heads alone were above the water, that the Gauls could not resist.

38. This running, and massing, and shouting of the legions, how toilsome it is!



39. O Greece, so poor sometimes in words, wherein you always think yourself rich !

40. Here will be the place for you to set your ambuscade, and from which to sally upon their rear.

41. The practice of speech, just like nature, is twofold.

42. This is nothing to the point, you say : well, suppose it is not ; yet certainly it is rather important.

43. Since you write me nothing about this matter, I shall hold it exactly as if you had written that there was no such thing.

44. What then does this life lack for which it would be (*say* by which it may be) the happier ?

45. What in human affairs would seem great to one to whom all eternity and the extent of the whole universe were known ?

## EXERCISE XVIII.

### A.

1. To think of the affair having turned out so !

2. How few fluent men there are ! How few skilled in the law !

3. How, in giving advice, you pass over nothing !

4. How he despised this and thought nothing of it (*say* esteemed it for nothing) !

5. How honest and honourable a man he was !

### B.

6. What a return thence to Rome indeed ! What a disturbance of the whole city !

7. O unhappy one, if you understand this ; more unhappy, if you understand it not !

8. How wretched it is to be unable to deny that which it is most shameful to admit !

9. Oh ! thing shameful not only to see, but also to hear !

10. What a flight was yours ! What terror on that memorable day !

C.

11. O that magnificent tour of yours, when you attempted to colonise Capua !

12. How few will be found to seek substantial and true renown !

13. How delighted I am that the slave delivered you the letter at the right moment !

14. Then to think of my having been in Spain rather than at Formiae at the time when you set out (to join) Pompeius !

15. O iron-hearted, not to be moved by his dangers !

EXERCISE XIX.

A.

1. Either learn or leave.

2. He entreated me, or rather commanded me, to depart.

3. Riches, honour, and glory are placed in our sight (*say* eyes).

4. He never addresses Pompey save with great respect.

5. Certainly it is something to have returned home from the wars.

B.

6. They called such a collection of houses a town or city.

7. How heartily he rejoiced at my return, or rather turning back !

8. Everything must be well expressed, or the name of eloquence must be abandoned.

9. You ought not only to hope for prosperity, but also to endure adversity with a brave (*use superlative*) mind.

10. Gisgo, Bostar and Mago were sent with the envoys of the Macedonians.

## C.

11. Not only did none of the Senate put on mourning, but not even his kindred did so.

12. Not only foreign wares are imported, but also foreign manners.

13. Not only did you not forbid it, but you even approved of it.

14. Not only am I not allowed to be angry, but I may not even lament with impunity.

15. Hannibal's influence with the King was at that time very great indeed.

## EXERCISE XX.

## A.

1. He said that he went down to the Forum when day was dawning.

2. They said that they would stay until the messenger returned.

3. He reported that the games were not concluded before three gladiators had been killed.

4. He bade him be sure to be at Rome.

5. He maintained that you ought to have regard to his interests.

6. He asked whether anyone would venture to deny it.

7. I enquired when he would reach the camp at Pharsalus.

8. He asked whether everyone had not to die some day.

9. They said that they would tell him all when he came.

10. He said that the city would have been taken already, had not reinforcements arrived.

*Translate into Latin the following pairs of sentences, the latter of each pair into a dependent statement or command (as required by the sense), introduced by a past tense of dico or impero respectively :—*

## B.

11. To-morrow I shall fight in the open plain ; and whoso brings in the head of a foe, I will bid him at once be free.

On the following day he would fight in the open plain ; and whoso should bring him the head of a foe, he would bid him at once be free.

12. Therefore, soldiers, enter the battle with good courage, for the enemy will soon turn their backs.

Then let the soldiers enter the battle with good courage, for the enemy would soon turn their backs.

13. Banish him far from his native land ; bid him be carried off to Alexandria.

Let them banish him far from his native land, let them bid him be carried off to Alexandria.

14. If you annoy us with a war, you shall soon learn that to attack us is one thing, to attack our allies another.

If they annoyed (them) with a war, they should soon learn that to attack them was one thing, to attack their allies another.

15. If you had yielded to the foe, you would have been driven from your native land.

If they had yielded to the foe, they would have been driven from their native land.

## C.

16. It is no concern of mine what my brothers are doing or have done.

It was no concern of his what his brothers were doing or had done.

17. In this I surpass you, that I know well the plans of both leaders.

In this he surpassed them, that he knew well the plans of both leaders.

18. If we have done our best, we shall not be chastised.

If they had done their best, they would not be chastised.

*Translate into Latin:—*

19. The conquered are actually making war on their conquerors. The conquered have been haughtily and graspingly ruled.

The Romans were indignant on the ground that the conquered were actually making war on their conquerors; the Carthaginians because they considered that the conquered had been haughtily and graspingly ruled.

20. The universe is a god, than which nothing in the natural world is better.

You were not in doubt that the universe was a god, than which nothing in the natural world was better.



## V O C A B U L A R Y.

—

NOTE. The Latin words here given are a rendering of the English as it stands in the Exercises. The Vocabulary is not intended for use except in conjunction with the Exercises.

— — —

### EXERCISE I.

- A. *I storm* ..... expugno, -are.  
*I defeat* ..... vinco, -ĕre, vici, victum.  
*I admire* ..... miror, -ari, *dep.*  
*I slay* ..... occĭdo, -ĕre, occĭdi, occĭsum.  
*I subdue* ..... debello, -are.  
*I help* ..... iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum.  
*Latin* ..... Latine (*adv.*).  
*clerk* ..... scriba, -ae, *m.*  
*I consider* ..... existimo, -are.  
*poem* ..... carmen, -ĭnis, *n.*  
*I cheer* ..... consōlor, -ari, *dep.*  
*poor* ..... miser, -a, -um.  
*I reach* ..... pervēnio, -ire, pervēni, perventum
- B. *definite* ..... certus, -a, -um.  
*pursuit* ..... studium, -ii, *n.*  
*boyhood* ..... pueritia, -ae, *f.*  
*recollection* ..... memoria, -ae, *f.*  
*store* ..... copia, -ae, *f.*  
*I gain* ..... pario, -ĕre, peperī, partum.  
*I am mistaken* ..... erro, -are.  
*I think* ..... sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum.  
*aright, rightly* ..... recte, rite.  
*fortress* ..... praesidium, -ii, *n.*  
*language* ..... lingua, -ae, *f.*  
*I pursue* ..... sequor, -i, secutus.  
*rank* ..... honos, -ōris, *m.*  
*I elect* ..... delĭgo, -ĕre, delĕgi, delectum  
*cote* ..... suffragium, -ii, *n.*

<i>honourable, upright</i> .....	honestus, -a, -um.
<i>freeborn</i> .....	ingenuus, -a, -um.
C. <i>handsome</i> .....	lautus, -a, -um.
<i>happy</i> .....	beatus, -a, -um.
<i>virtuous</i> .....	probus, -a, -um.
<i>I express</i> .....	dīco, -ĕre, dixi, dictum.
<i>in a body</i> .....	cuncti, -ae, -a.
<i>calamity</i> .....	clades, -is, f.
<i>lightnings</i> .....	fulmen, -inis, n.
<i>at least</i> .....	quidem.
<i>unhappy</i> .....	miser, -a, -um.
<i>in reality</i> .....	re verā.
<i>I besiege</i> ...	obsīdeo. -ĕre, obsēdi, obsessum.
<i>I talk of</i> .....	ago (-ĕre, ēgi, actum) de.
<i>expense</i> .....	sumptus, -ūs, m.
<i>display</i> .....	apparatus, -ūs, m.
<i>in short</i> .....	denīque.
<i>I harass</i> .....	laccio, -ĕre, -īvi, -ītum.
<i>line</i> .....	agmen, -inis, n.
<i>I make a speech</i> .....	orationem habeo, -ĕre.

## EXERCISE II.

A. <i>To beware of</i> .....	cāveo, -ĕre, cāvī, cautum.
<i>I come to the assistance of</i>	subvēnio, -ire, subvēni, subventum.
<i>I pardon</i> .....	ignosco, -ĕre, ignōvi, ignōtum.
<i>I govern</i> .....	praesum, -esse, -fui.
<i>relying on</i> .....	fretus, -a, -um.
<i>duty</i> .....	munus, -eris, n.
<i>I pay</i> .....	solvo, -ĕre, solvi, solutum.
<i>capable of enduring</i> ...	patiens, -tis.
<i>I thank</i> .....	gratias ago, -ĕre, ēgi, actum.
B. <i>guide</i> .....	dux, ducis, m.
<i>I approach</i> .....	subeo, -ire, -ii, -ītum.
<i>uneven</i> .....	inīquus, -a, -um.
<i>ridge</i> .....	iugum, -i, n.
<i>I savour of</i> .....	redōleo, -ĕre.
<i>practice</i> .....	exercitatio, -onis, f.
<i>notable</i> .....	nobilis, -e.
<i>I set over</i> .....	praeficio, -ĕre, praefeci, praefec- tum.
<i>I remind</i> ...	admōneo, -ĕre.
<i>poverty</i> .....	egestas, -tātis, f.
<i>greed</i> .....	cupiditas, -tātis, f.



<i>disgrace</i> .....	<i>ignōmīnia</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>I withstand</i> .....	<i>resisto</i> , -ēre, <i>restiti</i> .
<i>wrong</i> .....	<i>iniuria</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>extortion</i> .....	<i>res repetundae</i> , <i>rerum repetun-</i> <i>darum</i> , <i>f</i> .
<i>alike</i> .....	<i>pārīter</i> .
<i>eager for</i> .....	<i>cupīdus</i> , -a, -um.
<i>competent</i> .....	<i>capax</i> , -āeis.
<i>guilty</i> .....	<i>nocens</i> , -tis.
<i>I am dissatisfied</i> .....	<i>me poenitet</i> , -ēre.
<i>resources</i> .....	<i>vīres</i> , -ium, <i>f. pl.</i>
<i>I carry off</i> .....	<i>aufero</i> , -ferre, <i>abstūli</i> , <i>ablātum</i> .
C. <i>doings</i> .....	<i>facta</i> , -orum, <i>n. pl.</i>
<i>I ride past</i> .....	<i>praetervehor</i> , -i, <i>praetervēctus</i> , <i>dep.</i>
<i>lately</i> .....	<i>nūper</i> .
<i>I heal</i> .....	<i>medeor</i> , -ēri.
<i>unspeakable</i> .....	<i>nefandus</i> , -a, -um.
<i>crime</i> .....	<i>flagitium</i> , -ii, <i>n.</i>
<i>accused of</i> .....	<i>reus</i> , -i, <i>m. (and rea</i> , -ae, <i>f.)</i> .
<i>palpable</i> .....	<i>manifestus</i> , -a, -um.
<i>I threaten</i> .....	<i>minītor</i> , -ari.
<i>troublesome</i> .....	<i>molestus</i> , -a, -um.
<i>hail</i> .....	<i>grando</i> , -īnis, <i>f</i> .
<i>vine</i> .....	<i>vītis</i> , -is, <i>f</i> .
<i>sweetness</i> .....	<i>suavitas</i> , -tatis, <i>f</i> .
<i>I survive</i> .....	<i>supersum</i> , -esse, -fui.
<i>I excel</i> .....	<i>praesto</i> , -are, <i>praestīti</i> , <i>praestitum</i> .
<i>I supply</i> .....	<i>praebeo</i> , -ēre.

## EXERCISE III.

A. <i>I am exiled</i> .....	<i>exsūlo</i> , -are.
<i>I oppose</i> .....	<i>adversor</i> , -ari, <i>dep.</i>
<i>I am disgusted</i> .....	<i>me taedet</i> , -ēre.
<i>surgeon</i> .....	<i>medīcus</i> , -i, <i>m.</i>
<i>populous</i> .....	<i>frēquens</i> , -tis.
B. <i>I am beaten</i> .....	<i>vapūlo</i> , -are.
<i>penalty</i> .....	<i>poena</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>murder</i> .....	<i>parricīdium</i> , -ii, <i>n.</i>
<i>ignorance</i> .....	<i>inscitia</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>idleness</i> .....	<i>pigrītia</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>I acquit</i> .....	<i>absolvo</i> , -ēre, <i>absolvi</i> , <i>absolūtum</i> .

<i>charge</i> .....	crimen, -inis, <i>n.</i>
<i>I annul</i> .....	abrōgo, -are.
<i>arrogance</i> .....	superbia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>I dislike</i> .....	invideo, -ēre, invīdi, invīsum.
C. <i>I reach</i> .....	consequor, -i, consecūtus, <i>dep.</i>
<i>I abstain from</i> .....	abstineo, -ēre.
<i>mercy</i> .....	clementia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>I am without</i> .....	cāreo, -ēre.
<i>I am in want</i> .....	ēgeo, -ēre, -ui.
<i>unwittingly</i> .....	iniscus.
<i>unanimously</i> .....	consentiens, -tis.
<i>tottering</i> .....	lābans, -tis.
<i>guilt</i> .....	culpa, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>I fine</i> .....	multo, -are.
<i>I look after</i> .....	curo, -are.

## EXERCISE IV.

A. <i>election</i> .....	comitia, -orum, <i>n. pl.</i>
<i>fit</i> .....	aptus, -a, -um.
B. <i>I avoid</i> .....	vito, -are.
<i>I yield to</i> .....	cēdo, -ēre, cessi, cessum.
<i>I meet</i> .....	obvius (-a, -um) fio, fieri, factus.
<i>I draw near</i> .....	appropinquo, -are.
<i>probable</i> .....	verisimilis, -e.
<i>it turns out</i> .....	evēnit, -ire, evēnit, eventum.
<i>I am the servant of</i> .....	servio, -ire.
<i>I take in hand</i> .....	capesso, -ēre, -īvi, -itum.
<i>more than usually</i> .....	praeter solitum.
<i>on any account</i> .....	omnino.
<i>I move forward</i> .....	proficiscor, -i, profectus, <i>dep.</i>
<i>I come upon</i> .....	occurro, -ēre, occurri, occursum.
<i>I curb</i> .....	coerceo, -ēre.
<i>lust</i> .....	cupīdo, -inis, <i>f.</i>
<i>passion</i> .....	libīdo, -inis, <i>f.</i>
C. <i>patriotic</i> .....	bonus, -a, -um.
<i>I abandon</i> .....	omitto, -ēre, omisi, omisum.
<i>opportunity</i> .....	occasio, -onis, <i>f.</i>
<i>I loot</i> .....	diripio, -ēre, diripui, direptum.
<i>I bring up</i> .....	supporto, -are.

<i>I strike (with terror) ...</i>	percello, -ĕre, percūli, perculsum.
<i>I flee</i> .....	tergum (-i, n.) do, dare, dedi. datum.
<i>I secure</i> .....	impetro, -are.
<i>sacrifice</i> .....	sacrum, -i, n.
<i>I break up (camp)</i> .....	mōveo, -ĕre, mōvi, mōtum.
<i>I hurry</i> .....	cito, -are.
<i>I seize</i> .....	occupo, -are.
<i>goodness</i> .....	virtus, -utis, f.
<i>I prefer</i> .....	praepono, -ĕre, praeposui, prae- positum.
<i>I account worse</i> .....	posthabeo, -ĕre.

## EXERCISE V.

A. <i>I travel</i> .....	iter facio, -ĕre, feci, factum.
<i>I esteem</i> .....	aestimo, -are.
<i>I sell</i> .....	vendo, -ĕre, vendīdi, vendītum.
<i>ago</i> .....	abhinc.
<i>polished</i> .....	limatus, -a, -um.
B. <i>I overwhelm</i> .....	opprimo, -ĕre, oppressi, oppressum
<i>I surrender</i> .....	trado, -ĕre, tradidi, traditum.
<i>hopeless</i> .....	desperatus, -a, -um.
<i>spirit</i> .....	ardor, -ōris, m.
<i>but if</i> .....	quodsi.
<i>I stop</i> .....	māneo, -ĕre, mansi, mansum.
<i>hamlet</i> .....	vicus, -i, m.
C. <i>I cost</i> .....	consto, -are, constitui, constatum.
<i>I overhang</i> .....	impendo, -ĕre, impendi, impensum
<i>statue</i> .....	simulacrum, -i, n.
<i>I break into a sweat</i> ...	sudo, -are.
<i>I shrink</i> .....	extenuor, -ari.
<i>I stay</i> .....	resto, -are, restiti.
<i>I meet</i> .....	obeo, -ire, -ii, -ītum.
<i>coast (adj.)</i> .....	maritimus, -a, -um.
<i>I miss</i> .....	desidero, -are.
<i>I find</i> .....	reperio, -ire, repperi, repertum.
<i>relative</i> .....	necessarius, -ii, m.
<i>premature</i> .....	immaturus, -a, -um.
<i>I protect</i> .....	tego, -ĕre, texi, tectum.

## EXERCISE VI.

- A. *companion* ..... sodalis, -is, *m*.  
*ruin* ..... exitium, -ii, *n*.  
*witty* ..... venustus, -a, -um.  
*lame* ..... claudus, -a, -um.  
*avenge* ..... ulciscor, -i, ultus.  
*haste* ..... festinatio, -onis, *f*.  
B. *surname* ..... cognomen, -inis, *n*.  
*foresight* ..... prudentia, -ae, *f*.  
*I refuse* ..... nolo, nolle, nolui.  
*javelin* ..... pilum, -i, *n*.  
*hindrance* ..... impedimentum, -i, *n*.  
*I survive* ..... supersum, -esse, -fui.  
*over against* ..... contra.  
*promise* ..... spes, -ei, *f*.  
C. *sally* ..... eruptio, -onis, *f*.  
*I glut* ..... saturo, -are.  
*I repeat* ..... dictito, -are.  
*I announce* ..... indicō, -ēre, indixi, indictum.  
*fixed* ..... certus, -a, -um.  
*old* ..... tritus, -a, -um (*p. p. of* tero, -ēre, trivi, *I wear away*).  
*I am worth* ..... valeo, -ēre.  
*I impeach* ..... diem indicō, -ēre, indixi, indictum  
*purpose* ..... consilium, -ii, *n*.  
*I ponder* ..... excogito, -are.  
*I handle* ..... capesso, -ēre, -ivi, -itum.  
*I maintain* ..... alo, -ēre, alui, alitum.  
*dearth* ..... inopia, -ae, *f*.  
*I pour forth* ..... effundo, -ēre, effudi, effusum.

## EXERCISE VII.

- A. *I sail* ..... navibus vehor, -i, vectus.  
*as far as* ..... tenus.  
B. *I add* ..... adiungo, -ēre, adiunxi, adiunctum.  
*banquet* ..... epulac, -arum, *f*.  
*I drag* ..... traho, -ēre, traxi, tractum.  
*sorrow* ..... maeror, -ōris, *m*.  
C. *I travel* ..... feror, ferri, latus.  
*I accomplish* ..... gero, -ēre, gessi, gestum.  
*I approach* ..... succēdo, -ēre, successi, successum.

<i>I situate</i> .....	pono, -ĕre, posui, positum.
<i>sorrow</i> .....	luctus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
<i>I fly</i> .....	discurro, -ĕre, discurri, discursum.

## EXERCISE VIII.

A. <i>javelin</i> .....	iacŭlum, -i, <i>n.</i>
<i>delay</i> .....	mora, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>distinguished</i> .....	illustris, -e.
<i>several</i> .....	nonnulli, -ae, -a.
<i>inactive</i> .....	piger, -gra, -gram.
<i>I deliver</i> .....	reddo, -ĕre, reddidi, redditum.
B. <i>longing</i> .....	desiderium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
<i>punishment</i> .....	animadversio, -onis, <i>f.</i>
<i>forgetful</i> .....	immemor, -ōris.
<i>proposition</i> .....	res, -ei, <i>f.</i>
<i>I anger</i> .....	incendo, -ĕre, incendi, incensum.
<i>scarcely</i> .....	parum.
<i>plan</i> .....	consilium.
<i>it suggests itself</i> .....	in mentem vēnit (vēnit, ventum).
<i>readily</i> .....	libenter.
<i>break out</i> .....	perrumpo, -ĕre, perrŭpi, perrup- tum.
<i>disposition</i> .....	indōles, -is, <i>f.</i>
<i>crisis</i> .....	rerum discrimen, -īnis, <i>n.</i>
<i>welfare</i> .....	salus, -ūtis, <i>f.</i>
<i>intimate</i> .....	coniunctus, -a, -um.
<i>powers</i> .....	artes, -ium, <i>f. pl.</i>
<i>I think</i> .....	reor, rēri, ratus, <i>dep.</i>
<i>fortunes</i> .....	res, -ei, <i>f.</i>
<i>I fall</i> .....	corruo, -ĕre, corrui.
<i>I build up</i> .....	augeo, -ĕre, auxi, auctum.
<i>unwarlike</i> .....	imbellis, -e.
C. <i>I take part in</i> .....	intersum, -esse, -fui.
<i>crime</i> .....	scelus, -ĕris, <i>n.</i>
<i>I discover</i> .....	exquiro, -ĕre, exquisivi, exquisitum.
<i>now . . . now</i> .....	tum . . . tum.
<i>likely</i> .....	probabilis, -e.
<i>respectable</i> .....	honestus, -a, -um.
<i>household</i> .....	familia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>I shock</i> .....	offendo, -ĕre, offendi, offensum.
<i>object</i> .....	propositum, -i, <i>n.</i>
<i>skill</i> .....	ars, -tis, <i>f.</i>

<i>I leave</i> .....	concedo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum.
<i>lower animal</i> .....	bestia, -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>I claim</i> .....	vindico, -are.
<i>I treat</i> .....	utor, -i, usus.
<i>cruelly</i> .....	ferociter.
<i>fruitful</i> .....	uber, -ĕris.

## EXERCISE IX.

A. <i>Treasury</i> .....	aerarium, -ii, <i>n</i> .
<i>country-house</i> .....	villa, -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>interest</i> .....	faenus, -oris, <i>n</i> .
B. <i>I approach</i> .....	advēnio, -ire, advēni, adventum.
<i>rattle</i> .....	fama, -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>exiled</i> .....	profūgus, -a, -um.
<i>levy</i> .....	delectus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
<i>I await</i> .....	opperior, -iri, <i>dep</i> .
<i>prodigy</i> .....	ostentum, -i, <i>n</i> .
<i>I spend</i> .....	absumo, -ĕre, absumpsi, absump- tum.
<i>I put in the bank</i> .....	ad Ianum collōco, -are.
C. <i>I consecrate</i> .....	dedico, -are.
<i>power</i> .....	auctoritas, -tatis, <i>f</i> .
<i>in the hands of</i> .....	pēnēs.
<i>I collect</i> .....	cogo, -ĕre, coegi, coactum.
<i>generosity</i> .....	liberalitas, -tatis, <i>f</i> .
<i>I repay</i> .....	reddo, -ĕre, reddidi, redditum.
<i>I bestow</i> .....	addo, -ĕre, addidi, additum.
<i>supporter</i> .....	adiutor, -oris, <i>m</i> .
<i>fool</i> .....	stultus, -i, <i>m</i> .
<i>tomorrow</i> .....	crastīnus dies, -ei, <i>m</i> .
<i>view</i> .....	sententia, -ae, <i>f</i> .
<i>I limit</i> .....	definio, -ire.
<i>an obligation</i> .....	officium, -ii, <i>n</i> .
<i>will</i> .....	testamentum, -i, <i>n</i> .
<i>I execute (a document)</i> ..	facio, -ĕre, feci, factum.

## EXERCISE X.

A. <i>I spare</i> .....	parco, -ĕre, peperci, parsum.
<i>I visit</i> .....	viso, -ĕre, visi, visum.
<i>I blockade</i> .....	obsideo, -ĕre, obsēdi, obsessum.
<i>I give my attention to</i> ...	studeo, -ĕre; me confero, conferre, contuli, collātum.

B. <i>for myself</i> .....	equidem.
<i>for years</i> .....	iamdudum.
<i>for some time</i> .....	iampridem.
<i>duty</i> .....	munus, -ëris, <i>n.</i>
<i>I demand</i> .....	impero, -are.
<i>severity</i> .....	acerbitas, -tatis, <i>f.</i>
<i>shouting</i> .....	clamor, -ôris, <i>m.</i>
C. <i>suitable</i> .....	idoneus, -a, -um.
<i>it befalls</i> .....	accidit, -ëre, accidit.
<i>previous</i> .....	superior, -ius.
<i>ambush</i> .....	insidiae, -arum, <i>f.</i>
<i>build</i> .....	fabricatio, -onis, <i>f.</i>
<i>I consider</i> .....	perspicio, -ëre, perspexi, perspec- tum.
<i>courteously</i> .....	comiter.
<i>argument</i> .....	ratio, -onis, <i>f.</i>
<i>strong</i> .....	firmus, -a, -um.
<i>robber</i> .....	praedo, -ônis, <i>m.</i>
<i>I bear witness</i> .....	testimonium (-i, <i>n.</i> ) dico, -ëre, dixi, dictum.
<i>prosperous</i> .....	secundus, -a, -um.
<i>I disprove</i> .....	redarguo, -ëre, redargui.
<i>exhibition</i> .....	spectaculum, -i, <i>n.</i>
<i>I squander</i> .....	effundo, -ëre, effudi, effusum.
<i>lavishly</i> .....	inconsulte.
<i>I am munificent</i> .....	largior, -iri, <i>dep.</i>
<i>I prompt</i> .....	stimulo, -are.
<i>I regain</i> .....	recupero, -are.

## EXERCISE XI.

A. <i>I destroy</i> .....	deleo, -ëre, deleui, deletum.
B. <i>I am born</i> .....	nascor, -i, natus, <i>dep.</i>
<i>bribery</i> .....	ambitus, -ûs, <i>m.</i>
C. <i>another's</i> .....	alienus, -a, -um.
<i>I ruin</i> .....	perdo, -ëre, perdidit, perditum.
<i>character</i> .....	mores, -um, <i>m. pl.</i>
<i>Heaven</i> .....	di, deorum, <i>m. pl.</i>
<i>fetters</i> .....	vinculum, -i, <i>n.</i>
<i>servitude</i> .....	servitus, -tutis, <i>f.</i>
<i>I break</i> .....	refringo, -ëre, refregi, refractum
<i>bars</i> .....	claustra, -orum, <i>n. pl.</i>
<i>save as</i> .....	secus quam ( <i>lit., otherwise than</i> ).
<i>Lat. Comp.</i>	

## EXERCISE XII.

- A. *I pitch* (a camp) ..... pono, -ĕre, posui, positum.  
*I strive* ..... nitor, -i, nisus or nixus, *dep.*
- B. *without orders* ..... iniussu.  
*envoy* ..... lĕgatus, -i, *m.*  
*I strive* ..... contendo, -ĕre, contendi, contentum.
- C. *on the one hand . . . on the other hand* ..... hinc . . . hinc.  
*I defile* ..... respergo, -ĕre, respersi, respersum  
*impious* ..... nefandus, -a, -um.  
*in what fashion?* ..... quemadmodum?  
*I prevent* ..... impedio, -ire.

## EXERCISE XIII.

- A. *I bereave* ..... orbo, -are.
- B. *I take away* ..... dĕmo, -ĕre, dempsi, demptum.  
*I stay* ..... sisto, -ĕre, stiti, stĕtum.  
*disgraceful* ..... foedus, -a, -um.  
*I adorn* ..... exorno, -are.  
*I hallow* ..... consecro, -are.  
*I abolish* ..... tollo, -ĕre, sustŭli, sublatum.  
*utterly* ..... undĭque.  
*consistently* ..... usque quaque.
- C. *I keep off from* ..... abstinco, -ĕre, abstinui, abstentum  
*I withdraw* ..... discedo, -ĕre, discessi, discessum.  
*I forbear* ..... parco, -ĕre, peperi, parsum.  
*I boast* ..... iacto, -are.  
*I drop* ..... omitto, -ĕre, omisi, omissum.  
*democratic* ..... popularis, -e.  
*I appoint* ..... appono, -ĕre, apposui, appositum  
*I commence* ..... instauro, -are.

## EXERCISE XIV.

- A. *why . . . not?* ..... quin?  
*some one* ..... nescio quis.
- B. *weight* ..... gravitas, -tatis, *f.*  
*I make* (a treaty) ..... ferio, -ire (lit., *I strike*).  
*treaty* ..... foedus, -eris, *n.*  
*I suffer* ..... sino, -ĕre, sĭvi, sĭtum.  
*I ravage* ..... vasto, -are.



<i>it makes a difference.....</i>	interest, -esse, -fuit.
<i>help .....</i>	auxilium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
<i>I assist .....</i>	succurro, -ĕre, succurri, succursum.
<i>I lay aside.....</i>	depono, -ĕre, deposui, depositum
<i>soon .....</i>	cito.
<i>I see .....</i>	inviso, -ĕre, in visi, invisum.
<i>character .....</i>	ingenium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
C. <i>rudely .....</i>	contumeliose.
<i>I open.....</i>	aperio, -ire, aperui, apertum.
<i>place of refuge .....</i>	receptaculum, -i, <i>n.</i>
<i>I have influence .....</i>	possum, posse, potui.
<i>I despise.....</i>	contemno, -ĕre, contempsi, contemptum.
<i>it concerns .....</i>	rĕfert, rĕfferre, rĕtŭlit.
<i>I determine .....</i>	statuo, -ĕre, statui, statutum.
<i>a murderer .....</i>	parricida, -ae, <i>c.</i>
<i>a maintainer.....</i>	vindex, -icis, <i>c.</i>
<i>a reason .....</i>	causa, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>law-court .....</i>	indicium, -i, <i>n.</i>
<i>in the next place .....</i>	deinceps.
<i>to-day.....</i>	hodiernus dies, -ei, <i>m.</i>
<i>I disapprove .....</i>	imprŏbo, -are.

## EXERCISE XV.

A. <i>I determine .....</i>	decerno, -ĕre, decrevi, decretum.
<i>I appoint .....</i>	creo, -are.
<i>I surrender .....</i>	dedo, -ere, dedidi, deditum.
<i>I cause, contrive .....</i>	efficio, -ĕre, effeci, effectum.
<i>I repair .....</i>	reficio, -ĕre, refeci, reffectum.
<i>I prevent .....</i>	obsto, -are, obstiti, obstitum.
<i>I contract .....</i>	loco, -are.
<i>it happens .....</i>	evĕnit, -ire, evĕnit, eventum.
B. <i>I see to .....</i>	curo, -are.
<i>I throw down .....</i>	deicio, -ĕre, deieci, deiectum.
<i>I determine .....</i>	constituo, -ere, constitui, constitutum.
<i>I rouse .....</i>	excito, -are.
<i>prostrate .....</i>	iacens, -tis.
<i>I bring about .....</i>	committo, -ĕre, commisi, commissum.
<i>I deliver.....</i>	reddo, -ĕre, reddidi, redditum.
<i>I make haste .....</i>	propero, -are.

<i>I withstand</i> .....	sustineo, -ĕre, sustinui, sustentum.
<i>I instruct</i> .....	praecepicio, -ĕre, praecepi, praeceptum.
<i>I give (battle)</i> .....	committo, -ĕre, commisi, commissum.
<i>I grant</i> .....	concedo, -ĕre, concessi, concessum.
C. <i>serious</i> .....	gravis, -e.
<i>misdeed</i> .....	facinus, -ōris, <i>n</i> .
<i>I esteem</i> .....	diligo, -ĕre, dilexi, dilectum.
<i>extremely</i> .....	vehementer.
<i>treacherous</i> .....	perfidus, -a, -um.
<i>I am very near</i> .....	haud multum absum, -esse, -fui.
<i>I am a candidate for</i> ...	peto, -ĕre -ivi, -itum.
<i>magistracy</i> .....	magistratus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
<i>I support</i> .....	adsum, -esse, -fui.
<i>publicly</i> .....	palam.
<i>with difficulty</i> .....	aegre.
<i>I obtain</i> .....	impetro, -are.
<i>dispute</i> .....	contentio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
<i>meeting</i> .....	contio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .

## EXERCISE XVI.

A. <i>I laugh at</i> .....	rīdeo, ridēre, rīsi, rīsum.
<i>half</i> .....	dimidium, -ii, <i>n</i> .
<i>indolent</i> .....	iners, -tis.
<i>I am there</i> .....	adsum, -esse, -fui.
B. <i>I win</i> .....	adipiscor, -i, adeptus, <i>dep</i> .
<i>I pay attention</i> .....	operam do, dare, dēdi, datum.
<i>breast</i> .....	pectus, -ōris, <i>n</i> .
<i>I display</i> .....	ostendo, -ĕre, ostendi, ostentum.
<i>trustworthy</i> .....	fidus, -a, -um.
<i>I imagine</i> .....	opīnor, -ari.
<i>I retire</i> .....	concēdo, ĕre, concessi, concessum.
<i>then</i> .....	proinde.
<i>I am still</i> .....	quiesco, -ĕre, quiēvi, quiētum.
<i>supposing</i> .....	etsi.
<i>I rob</i> .....	aufero, auferre, abstūli, ablatum.
<i>satisfied</i> .....	contentus, -a, -um.
<i>occasionally</i> .....	interdum.
<i>trickery</i> .....	dolus, -i, <i>m</i> .
<i>cheating</i> .....	fraus, -dis, <i>f</i> .
<i>I recommend</i> .....	prōbo, -are.

<i>panic</i> .....	metus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
<i>I afflict</i> .....	mōveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum.
<i>regret</i> .....	desiderium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
C. <i>if anywhere</i> .....	sicubi.
<i>struggle</i> .....	certamen, -inis, <i>n.</i>
<i>situation</i> .....	situs, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
<i>I deprive</i> .....	adīmo, -ēre, adēmi, ademptum.
<i>sight</i> .....	aspectus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
<i>groaning</i> .....	gemitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
<i>I avail</i> .....	valeo, -ēre.
<i>I strengthen</i> .....	confirmo, -are.
<i>heedlessly</i> .....	temere.
<i>intentionally</i> .....	consulto.
<i>wrong</i> .....	iniuria, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>emotion</i> .....	perturbatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
<i>I prevent</i> .....	arceo, -ēre.
<i>I drive out</i> .....	expello, -ēre, expūli, expulsum.
<i>enjoyment</i> .....	iucunditas, -tātis, <i>f.</i>
<i>disease</i> .....	morbns, -i, <i>m.</i>

## EXERCISE XVII.

A. <i>I mount</i> .....	conscendo, -ēre, conscendi, consensum.
<i>I lie hid</i> .....	lāteo, -ēre.
<i>it grows light</i> .....	lucescit, -ēre.
<i>it is light</i> .....	lucet, lucēre, luxit.
<i>it begins to grow dark</i> ..	vesperascit, -ēre, vesperavit.
B. <i>I exhaust</i> .....	conficio, -ēre, confeci, confectum.
<i>I deem</i> .....	iudico, -are.
<i>I trouble</i> .....	ango, -ēre, anxi.
<i>I enumerate</i> .....	collīgo, -ēre, collēgi, collectum.
<i>reality</i> .....	res, -ei, <i>f.</i>
<i>I accomplish</i> .....	conficio, -ēre, confēci, confectum.
<i>inexperienced</i> .....	rerum imperitus, -a, -um.
<i>I overthrow</i> .....	supero, -are.
<i>I begin negotiations</i> .....	ago, -ēre, egi, actum.
<i>just as if</i> .....	proinde ac.
<i>I make satisfaction</i> .....	satisfacio, -ēre, satisfeci, satisfactum.
<i>I stand my ground</i> .....	resisto, -ēre, restīti.
<i>I argue</i> .....	dissero, -ēre, disserni, dissertum.

<i>verily</i> .....	sane.
<i>I hope for</i> .....	opto, -are.
<i>soul</i> .....	animus, -i, <i>m</i> .
<i>I take ill</i> .....	graviter fero, ferre, tuli, latum.
<i>disposition</i> .....	animus, -i, <i>m</i> .
<i>district</i> .....	regio, -onis, <i>f</i> .
<i>with grace</i> .....	modeste.
C. <i>limit</i> .....	finis, -is, <i>f</i> .
<i>I get back</i> .....	revertō, -ēre, reverti, reversum.
<i>in three divisions</i> .....	tripartīto.
<i>I follow up</i> .....	persequor, -ī, persecutus, <i>dep</i> .
<i>guiltless</i> .....	insons, -tis.
<i>quite</i> .....	admōdum.
<i>I agree</i> .....	assentior, -iri, assensus, <i>dep</i> .
<i>modesty</i> .....	pudor, -ōris, <i>m</i> .
<i>I destroy</i> .....	diruo, -ēre, dirūi, dirutum.
<i>I am above</i> .....	exsto, -are.
<i>massing</i> .....	concursum, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
<i>poor</i> .....	inops, -ōpis.
<i>I am rich</i> .....	abundo, -are.
<i>I set</i> .....	collōco, -are.
<i>I sally</i> .....	erumpo, -ēre, erūpi, eruptum.
<i>practice</i> .....	exercitatio, -onis, <i>f</i> .
<i>point</i> .....	res, -ei, <i>f</i> .
<i>important</i> .....	gravis, -e.
<i>I lack</i> .....	desidero, -are.
<i>universe</i> .....	mundus, -i, <i>m</i> .

## EXERCISE XVIII.

A. <i>fluent</i> .....	dīsertus, -a, -um.
<i>skilled in</i> .....	peritus, -a, -um.
<i>I pass over</i> .....	praetermitto, -ēre, praetermīsi, praetermissum.
<i>honest</i> .....	integer, -gra, -grum.
B. <i>disturbance</i> .....	perturbatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
<i>shameful</i> .....	turpis, -e.
<i>I admit</i> .....	confiteor, -ēri, confessus, <i>dep</i> .
<i>terror</i> .....	formido, -inis, <i>f</i> .
C. <i>magnificent</i> .....	praeclarus, -a, -um.
<i>tour</i> .....	percursatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
<i>I colonise</i> .....	coloniam dedūco, -ēre, deduxi, deductum.

<i>substantial</i> .....	<i>solidus</i> , -a, -um.
<i>renown</i> .....	<i>laus</i> , -dis, <i>f</i> .
<i>at the right moment</i> .....	<i>opportune</i> .
<i>then</i> .....	<i>ergo</i> .
<i>iron-hearted</i> .....	<i>ferreus</i> , -a, -um.

## EXERCISE XIX.

A. <i>placed</i> .....	<i>situs</i> , -a, -um.
<i>with respect</i> .....	<i>honorifice</i> .
B. <i>collection</i> .....	<i>coniunctio</i> , -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
<i>heartily</i> .....	<i>valde</i> .
<i>turning back</i> .....	<i>reversio</i> , -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
<i>I abandon</i> .....	<i>relinquo</i> , -ēre, <i>relinqui</i> , <i>relictum</i> .
<i>prosperity</i> .....	<i>secunda</i> ( <i>n. pl.</i> of <i>secundus</i> , -a, -um).
<i>adversity</i> .....	<i>adversa</i> ( <i>n. pl.</i> of <i>adversus</i> , -a, -um).
C. <i>I put on mourning</i> .....	<i>vestem</i> ( <i>vestis</i> , -is, <i>f</i> .) <i>muto</i> , -are.
<i>kindred</i> .....	<i>cognati</i> , -orum, <i>m. pl.</i>
<i>foreign</i> .....	<i>adventicius</i> , -a, -um.
<i>wares</i> .....	<i>pl.</i> of <i>merx</i> , <i>mercis</i> .
<i>with impunity</i> .....	<i>impune</i> .
<i>influence</i> .....	<i>auctoritas</i> .

## EXERCISE XX.

B. <i>tomorrow</i> .....	<i>cras</i> .
<i>open</i> .....	<i>pāteus</i> , -tis.
<i>I bring in</i> .....	<i>refero</i> , -ferre, <i>rettuli</i> , <i>relātum</i> .
<i>therefore</i> .....	<i>proinde</i> .
<i>I banish</i> .....	<i>ablēgo</i> , -are.
<i>I carry off</i> .....	<i>asporto</i> , -are.
<i>I annoy</i> .....	<i>laccio</i> , -ēre, -īvi, -ītum.
<i>I learn</i> .....	<i>intellēgo</i> , -ēre, <i>intellexi</i> , <i>intellectum</i> .
<i>I yield</i> .....	<i>cēdo</i> , -ēre, <i>cessi</i> , <i>cessum</i> .
C. <i>I surpass</i> .....	<i>praesto</i> , -are, <i>prestiti</i> , <i>prestitum</i> .
<i>I know</i> .....	<i>cognitum</i> ( <i>p. p.</i> of <i>cognosco</i> , -ēre, <i>cognōvi</i> ) <i>habeo</i> , -ēre.
<i>I am silent</i> .....	<i>taceo</i> , -ēre.
<i>I do my best</i> .....	<i>pro virili parte ago</i> , -ēre, <i>egi</i> , <i>actum</i> .
<i>I am chastised</i> .....	<i>vapulo</i> , -are.
<i>actually</i> .....	<i>ultro</i> .
<i>I consider</i> .....	<i>crēdo</i> , -ēre, <i>credidi</i> , <i>creditum</i> ,
<i>graspingly</i> .....	<i>āvāre</i> .
<i>the natural world</i> .....	<i>rerum natura</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .

## I.—ENGLISH INDEX.

---

- A**BLATIVE, 51-55; absolute, 82-84; agent and instrument, 110; place from which, 116-119; place at which, 120-122; road by which, 123; of time, 125, 126; of price, 128; of measure and standard, 129-130; of quality, 133, and *n.*; of material, 134; relations expressed by, 147-150.
- Abounding, verbs and adjectives of, 51.
- Abstract expressions, how to render, 329, 330.
- Accomplishing, verbs of, 238.
- Accusative, as object, 30-35; infinitive as, 101, and *m.*; subject of infinitive, 104; place whither, 112-115; extent of space and time, 124; various relations expressed by, 135-137.
- Accusing, verbs of, 38.
- Action, nouns expressing, 40.
- Adjectives, with dative, 49; with ablative, 53.
- Advantage, dative of, 143, and *n.* 1.
- Adverbial accusative, 136, and *n.*
- Adverbs, of place, 123, *n.*; numeral, 188; relative, 273, 278, 283; place of, in sentence, 323.
- Advising, verbs of, 106.
- Agent, expressed by ablative with *ab.*, 110, and *n.* 2; expressed by dative, 111.
- "Ago," how to express, 126, *n.* 2.
- Antecedent, 15, *n.* 1, 18; attraction of, 17.
- Antecedent demonstratives, 165.
- "Any," how to render, 173.
- Aoristic perfect, 197.
- Apodosis, independent statements, 305.
- Apposition, 9; and case, 9, *n.* 2; to translate, 9, *n.* 3.
- Arrangement of words and clauses in Latin, 317-328.
- Asking, verbs of, 35, and *m.*, 243; with subjunctive, 106.
- Assimilation, subjunctive by, 315.
- Asyndeton, 297, *Obs.*
- Attending to, verbs of, 242.
- Attribute, position of, 321.
- Attributive adjectives, 12, 13, *n.* 2, 163, *n.* 2.
- B**ARGAINING, verbs of, 242.
- "But if," how to render, 256, *n.* 2.
- C**ALENDAR, 189, 190.
- Cardinal Numerals, 181-183.
- Causal Clauses, 269-274.
- Charge, genitive of, 38.
- Chiasmus, 321, *Obs.*
- Clauses, subject and object, 232-247.
- Cognate accusative, 33.
- Collective substantive, 11, *n.* 2; as antecedent, 18.
- Commands, 208, and *n.*, 216, 217, 219.

Comparative, use of, 178; sentences, 239, 265-268.

Comparison, how expressed, 129-132.

Compelling, verbs of, 240.

Complement, 6, *mn.* 1, 2; of *esse*, 13; dative of, 114.

Complex sentence, 212; order of words in, 325.

Compound numbers, 183, and *mn.*, 185.

Compound sentence, 212, *Obs.*

Concessive clauses, 260-264; concessive subjunctive, 260, *n.*

Concords, I., 11; II., 12, 23; III., 15; compound, 21.

Condemning, verbs of, 38.

Condition, implied, 257, *n.*

Conditional sentences, 248-259; apodosis of, in dependent statements, 305.

Conjunctions, in dependent clauses, 316.

Conjunctives, 297, 298.

Consecutive clauses, 215, *n.* 2, 280-286; distinguished from final clauses, 281.

Copula, definition of, 6, *n.* 1; omission of, 8, *n.*

Copulative verbs, 14, 34, *n.*

Correlative adjectives and adverbs, 165; correlatives of result, 282.

**D**ATIVE, as indirect object, 26, *n.* 1, 29; of agent, 111; relations expressed by, 143-147.

Deliberative subjunctive, 207.

Demonstrative adjectives, 157-159.

Dependent statements, 302-315; commands, 310; questions, 226, 227, 331.

Deponent verbs, 61-64.

Description, ablative of, 133.

Determinative adjectives, 160-163.

Determining, verbs of, 241.

Direct questions, 221-225.

Disjunctives, 299-300.

Distributive numerals, 186, and *n.*, 187.

Double negative, 299.

Double questions, 225.

Duration, accusative of, 124.

**E**PISTOLARY imperfect, 196, *n.* 2.

Ethic dative, 143, and *n.* 3.

Exclamations, accusative, 137; infinitive, 296.

Exhortations, 208, and *Obs.*

Extent, accusative of, 124.

**F**ACTITIVE verbs, 34, 58.

Fearing, verbs of, 245-247.

Feeling, nouns expressing, 40.

Filling, verbs of, 39.

Forgetting, verbs of, 37.

Future, indicative, 203, and *n.*, 204, 250, 288, *n.*, 290; imperative, 216, and *n.* 1, 250, *n.* 2; infinitive, 109, (periphrastic) 286.

Future participle, 81, *n.* 4, 5.

Future-perfect, 204, and *n.* 2., 205, 250, 288, 290.

**G**ENITIVE, 37-40; of quality, 133, and *n.*; of material, 134; relations expressed by, 138-142.

Gerund, 80, 91, and *Obs.*; expressing purpose, 93, 145, *Obs.*; implying duty, 94, and *Obs.* 1, 2, 94; dative of agent with, 95.

Gerundival construction, 92, 276.

Gerundive, 90, and *mn.* 1, 2; uses of, 92, *mn.* 1, 2; expressing purpose, 93, 145, *Obs.*, 276; with reflexives, 154, *n.*; predicative, 242.

Goal of motion, expressed by accusative, 112-115; by dative, 146.

**HINDERING**, verbs of, 244.  
**H**istoric infinitive, 103.  
 Historic present, 201, 215, *n.* 1.  
 Historic tenses, 213, 215.  
 Hoping, verbs of, with future infinitive, 109.  
 Hortative subjunctive, 208, *Obs.*  
 Hypothetical sentences, 248-259.

**IMPERATIVE**, 216, 218, 219.  
**I**mp perfect, indicative, 196, 197, *n.*; subjunctive, 209, 215, 251, 254, 257, 290.  
 Impersonal verbs, 65, *ff.*; active, 66-75; passive, 76-78; with direct object, 69; with dative, 70; with impersonal passive infinitive, 72; with present infinitive, 79.  
 Indefinite pronoun, 168.  
 Indicative, 194-205; in subject or object clauses, 233, 234; in conditional clauses, 219, 250, 252, 253; in concessive clauses, 261, 262; in comparative clauses, 268; in causal clauses, 270, 272; in temporal clauses, 288-293; in dependent statements, 309, *n.* 3, 315, *n.*  
 Indirect object, 320.  
 Indirect questions, 226-231.  
 Infinitive, 79, 80, and *n.*; syntax of, 100-109; in exclamations, 296; in dependent statements, 304, 305, 309, *n.* 4.  
 Interest, 193.  
 Instrument, expressed by ablative, 110; expressed by dative, 111, and *n.*  
 Interrogative pronouns, 166, 167, 224; adjectives, 166, 224; adverbs, 167, 224.  
 Intransitive verbs, 24; with dative, 26; with accusative, 31.

**JUSSIVE** subjunctive, 208, 260, *n.*

**L IKENESS**, adjectives expressing, 40.  
 Locative, 122, and *mn.* 1, 3.

**MAKING**, verbs of, 34.  
**M**aterial, genitive and ablative of, 134.  
 Manner, ablative of, 149.  
 Measure, ablative of, 124, *n.*, 129, 130.  
 Measurement, expressions of, 119, *Obs.*  
 Money, 191-193.  
 Mood, see Indicative, etc.  
 Multiplication, expressions of, 188, *n.*  
 "Must," how to render, 216, *n.* 2.

**NAMING**, dative with words of, 147.  
 Negatives, 299, 301.  
 "No," how to render, 228.  
 Nominative, 11; infinitive as, 101.  
 Numerals, 181-187.

**OBJECT**, direct, 25, 29, 30; indirect, 25, 29, 41-55.  
 Objective genitive, 37-40, 140, *n.*  
 Oratio Obliqua, see Dependent statements.  
 Order of words, 317, *ff.*  
 Ordering, verbs of, 213.  
 Ordinal numerals, 181.  
 Origin, ablative of, 150.  
 Optative subjunctive, 203, *Obs.* 2, 209, and *n.*

**PARTICIPLES**, 81-89; see also present, etc.  
 Partitive genitive, 141, and *mn.*  
 Passive voice, 56-60; of transitive verbs, 56; of intransitive verbs, 60; in reflexive sense, 59; in indirectly reflexive sense, 59, *n.* 2; impersonal verbs, 76,



Penalty, genitive of, 38.  
 Perfect, indicative, 197, and *n.*, 202; subjunctive, 208, *n.*, 214, 215, *n.* 2, 250 (b), *n.* 1, 257.  
 Perfect participles, of deponent verbs, 62-64; with noun, 81, *n.* 3, 88, *n.*  
 Permitting, verbs of, 240, 243.  
 Personal pronouns, 152-154.  
 Persuading, verbs of, with subjunctive, 106.  
 Pitying, verbs of, 37.  
 Place, to which, 112-115; from which, 116-118; at which, 120 122; adverbs of, 123, *n.*  
 Pluperfect, indicative, 198, 253; subjunctive, 209, 215, 251, 290.  
 Possessive adjectives, 155, 156; in dependent statements, 306, 307.  
 Potential subjunctive, 210, 257.  
 Predicate, 3, 6.  
 Predicative adjectives, 13; gender of, 23.  
 Predicative, genitive, 142; dative, 144.  
 Prepositions, 151; order of, in sentence, 322.  
 Present, participle, 81, *n.* 2, 82, 87; indicative, 195, 199, 200, 201, 250, *n.* 4, 288, *Obs.*, 290, 292, 309, *n.* 3; subjunctive, 208, and *n.*, 209, 214, 250, 255, 257.  
 Present perfect, 197.  
 Preventing, verbs of, 244.  
 Price, genitive of, 127; ablative of, 127, 128, *Obs.*  
 Primary tenses, 213, 214.  
 Prohibitions, 208, *n.*, 218, 220.  
 Prolative infinitive, 102; with adjectives (poetical), 102, *n.* 2.  
 Promising, verbs of, with future infinitive, 109.  
 Pronouns, 152, *ff.*; in dependent statements, 306-308.  
 Protases, when indefinite, 255; double, 256, and *n.* 1.; implied, 257, *n.*

Purpose, dative of, 145, and *Obs.*

**Q**UALITY, genitive and ablative of, 133, and *n.*; genitive of, 142, *n.*  
 Questions, direct, 221-225; indirect, 226-231.

**R**ELATIVE adjectives, 164, *Obs.*, 165, 324; in causal clauses, 269, 273, 274; in final clauses, 276, 278; in consecutive clauses, 280, 283, 284; adverbs, 273, 278, 283, 324.  
 Relative clauses, 15-20; pronouns, 20, 164, 165; with *cum*, 20, *n.* 2.  
 Reciprocal action, 151 (ii.).  
 Reference, dative of, 143.  
 Reflexive pronouns, 154.  
 Regretting, verbs of, 37.  
 Remembering, verbs of, 37.  
 Reminding, verbs of, 35.  
 Reported description, subjunctive of, 314.  
 Respect, accusative of, 59, *Obs.*, 135; ablative of, 148.  
 Road by which, ablative of, 123.

**S**EMI-DEPENDENCE, subjunctive in, 243.  
 Separation, verbs expressing, 52; ablative of, 116, *n.*  
 Sequence of tenses, 213-215; in indirect questions, 227; in final clauses, 277; in periphrastic future infinitive, 286, *n.*  
 Simple sentence, 3; order of words in, 319.  
 "Some," how to render, 173.  
 Space, accusative of extent of, 124.  
 Standard, ablative of the, 129.  
 Subject, 3, 4.  
 Subjective genitive, 139, 140; how to distinguish from objective, 140, *n.*

Subjunctive, pure, 206-211; in subject and object clauses, 235-245, 247; in conditional clauses, 250, 251, 254, 255, 257-259; in concessive clauses, 261, 264; in comparative clauses, 267; in causal clauses, 271-274; in final clauses, 276, 278, 279; in consecutive clauses, 280-286; in temporal clauses, 290, 291, 293, 294; in dependent statements, 309-311, 314, 315.

"Such," how to render, 9, *n.* 3.

Superlative, with *quisque*, 176; with *quam*, 177.

Supine, 80; in *-um*, 97; denoting purpose, 276; with *iri*, 98, and *nn.* 1, 2, 3; in *-u*, 99, and *n.*

**T**EACHING, verbs of, 35.

Temporal clauses, 287-294.

Tenses, sequence of, 213-215, 227, 277.

Time, duration of, 124; at which, 125, 126, and *n.* 1; within which, 125.

Town, to which, 113, and *n.*, 114; from which, 117, and *n.*, 118; at which, 122, and *n.* 1.

Transitive verbs, 24; in passive, 27.

**V**ALUE, genitive of, 128; ablative of, 128, and *Obs.*

Verbs, with dative, 42-48; with ablative, 54; deponent, 61-64; partly deponent, 63; impersonal, 65-79.

**W**ISHES, 209.

Wishing, verbs of, 108.

Work contemplated, dative of, 145.

**"Y**ES," how to render, 228.

## II.—LATIN INDEX.

---

**A**BHINC, 126,  
*n.* 2.  
 Ac, 132, *n.* 1, 297;  
 ac si, 266.  
 Accidit, 70, 236, and  
*n.*  
 Ad, 113, *n.*  
 Adeo . . . ut, 282.  
 Admoneo, 35, *n.* 5.  
 Adolesco, 63, *n.*  
 Aestimo, 128.  
 Aliquis, 169, and *nn.*  
 Alius, 154 (ii.), and  
*n.* 186, *Obs.*  
 Alter, 174, 175.  
 Alteruter, 174.  
 Amplius, 132, *n.* 4.  
 An, 225, and *nn.*, 230,  
*Obs.*  
 Animi, 122, *n.* 3.  
 Annon, 225, and *n.* 2.  
 Antequam, 202, 287,  
 288, *Obs.*, 291, and  
*nn.*  
 Aptus, (with *quī*),  
 285.  
 As, 192, 193.  
 Atque, 132, *n.* 1, 297.  
 Audeo, 63.  
 Aut . . . aut, 300.  
 Autem, 328.

**C**APUT, 38, *n.* 1.  
 Causa, 93.  
 Caveo, 50, 220, and *n.*

Celo, 35, *n.* 3.  
 Ceno, 63, *n.*  
 Coepi, 72.  
 Cogo, 240.  
 Commonefacio, 35,  
*n.* 5.  
 Compleo, 39.  
 Conor, 107.  
 Consentio, 42, *n.* 3.  
 Constituo, 241.  
 Consulo, 50.  
 Contentus, 53.  
 Contingit, 236.  
 Convenio, 50.  
 Convenit, 70, 236.  
 Cuias, 166, *n.* 3.  
 Cum (conjunction),  
 85-89, 264, 269,  
 273, 283, 287, 290;  
 cum . . . tum, 165,  
*n.* 3.  
 Cum (preposition),  
 enclitic, 20, *n.* 2,  
 322.  
 Cupio, 108.  
 Curo, 217, 242.

**D**EBEO, 79, *n.* 1,  
 252.  
 Debet, 72.  
 Decerno, 241.  
 Decet, 69, 252.  
 Deficio, 45, *n.*  
 Delectat, 69; delecto,  
 42, *n.* 1, 69, *n.*

Denarius, 191.  
 Desinit, 72.  
 Dextra, 121, *n.* 1.  
 Dico, 243.  
 Dignor, 51.  
 Dignus, 53; (with  
*quī*), 285.  
 Dissimilis, 40, *n.* 2.  
 Domus, 113, 117,  
 122, *n.* 3,  
 Donec, 287, 292, 293.  
 Dono, 42, *n.* 2.  
 Dubito, 244, *n.* 3.  
 Dubito an, 230.  
 Dum, 200, 287, 292,  
 and *n.*, 293, 294,  
 and *n.* 3.  
 Dummodo, 294.

**E**CCIE, 137, *n.* 2.  
 Ecquis, 168, *n.*  
 Egeo, 39.  
 Eiusmodi, 9, *n.* 3,  
 165.  
 En, 137, *n.* 2.  
 Enim, 328.  
 Eo (adv.), 130, and  
*nn.* 1, 3, 268.  
 Esse, 13.  
 Est quī, 283, *n.*  
 Et, 297, 298.  
 Etiamsi, 248, 260, 261.  
 Etsi, 260, 261.  
 Evenit, 236.  
 Exsulo, 56, *n.*

**F**AC, 217, and *Obs.*,  
243.  
Fido, 63.  
Fio, 56, *n.*  
Flagito, 243.  
Fore ut, 286.  
Forsitan, 231.  
Fortasse, 231.  
Fretus, 53.  
Fruor, 54.  
Fungor, 54.

**G**AUDEO, 63,  
234.  
Gratia, 93.  
Gratulor, 42, *n.* 3.

**H**AUD, 323, *Obs.*  
Haud scio an,  
230.  
Hic, 157-159.

**I**AM DUDUM,  
iampridem, 199.  
Idem, 160: idem qui,  
160, *n.* 1.  
Idoneus (with *qui*),  
285.  
Idus, 189, 190.  
Ille, 157-159, 308.  
Impedio, 241, *n.* 3.  
Impello, 240.  
Impero, 243.  
Impleo, 39.  
In, 151.  
Indigeo, 39.  
Indignus, 53; (with  
*qui*), 285.  
Inquam, 104, *n.* 4,  
313.  
Interdico, 52, *n.* 2.  
Intereo, 56, *n.*  
Interest, 73, *n.* 2, 74,  
75.  
Ipse, 162, 163, 307,  
*n.* 2.  
Iri, 98.

Is, 160, 161, 308; is  
qui, is ut, 284.  
Iste, 157.  
Ita . . . si, 209, *n.*;  
ita . . . ut, (com-  
parative), 268,  
(consecutive), 282,  
and *n.*  
Iubeo, 43, *Obs.*, 107.  
Invat, 69; invo, 42,  
*n.* 1, 69, *n.*

**K**ALENDAE,  
189, 190.

**L**AEDO, 42, *n.* 1.  
Laetor, 234.  
Laeva, 121, *n.* 1.  
Libet, 70.  
Licet, 70, and *n.* 2,  
264 and *n.* 1.  
Liquet, 70.  
Loco, 121, *n.* 1.

**M**AGIS, 179, 180.  
Malo, 132, *n.* 6.  
Medius, 121.  
Metuo, 50, 245, 246.  
Milia, 182, and *n.* 1.  
Minus, 132, *n.* 4.  
Miror, 234; miror si,  
234, *n.*  
Misereor, 37, *n.* 1.  
Miseret, 37, *n.* 3, 69.  
Miseror, 37, *n.* 1.  
Modo, 294; modo . . .  
modo, 294, *n.* 2.

**N**E(negative), 208,  
235, 244, 245,  
264, 276; ne non,  
245, and *n.*; ne . . .  
quidem, 299, *n.*  
301, *Obs.*  
-ne, 223, and *nn.*, 225,  
248, *Obs.*, 328.  
Nec, see neque.

Necesse est, 252.  
Necne, 225, and *n.* 2.  
Nedum, 279.  
Nego, 228, and *n.* 1.  
Neque, 228, *n.* 2,  
323, *Obs.*  
Nescio an, 230.  
Nescio quis, 229.  
Neu, 219, 277, *n.* 2.  
Neuter, 174, 175.  
Neve, 219, 277, *n.* 2.  
Ni, nisi, 248; nisi  
forte, 259, *n.*  
Nitor, 54.  
Nolo, 218.  
Non, 323, *Obs.*  
Non modo, 301; for  
non modo non, 301,  
*n.*  
Nonae, 189, 190.  
Nonne, 223.  
Nubo, 63, *n.*  
Num, 223, 227, 248,  
*Obs.*

**O**BEO, 43, *Obs.*  
Oblecto, 42,  
*n.* 1.  
Oportet, 69, 79, 243,  
252.  
Opto, 108, *n.*  
Opus, 55, and *n.*  
Oro, 243.

**P**ACISCOR, 242.  
Pacitetur, 37, *n.*  
3, 69.  
Patiens, 40, *n.* 1.  
Pereo, 56, *n.*  
Perinde, 267, *n.* 1.  
Permitto, 240, 243.  
Persuadeo, 238, *n.* 3.  
Piget, 37, *n.* 3, 69.  
Plus, 132, *n.* 4, 179.  
Possum, 47, *n.*, 79,  
*nn.*, 252.

Postquam, 202, and *n.*, 287, 291, *nn.*  
 Potior, 54.  
 Potius, 179, *n.* ;  
     potius quam, 239.  
 Praeditus, 53.  
 Praesto, 45, *n.*, 50.  
 Prandeo, 63, *n.*  
 Pridie, 189, and *n.*  
 Priusquam, 202, 287,  
     288, *Obs.*, 291, and  
     *nn.*  
 Prohibeo, 244.  
 Proinde, 267, *n.* 1.  
 Promitto, 50.  
 Pudet, 37, *n.* 3, 69.

**Q**UAERO, 243.  
     Quam, 131, 132,  
     and *nn.* 1, 2, 3,  
     177, 180, 239.  
     Quam si, 266.  
     Quamquam, 262, 263.  
     Quamvis, 264, and  
     *nn.* 2, 3.  
     Quando, 167, *n.* ; 224,  
     *Obs.* 1, 269, 271, *n.*  
     Quandocumque, 287.  
     Quandoque, 287.  
     Quandoquidem, 269,  
     271, *n.*  
     Quasi, 266, 267.  
     -que, 328.  
     Quemadmodum, 266.  
     Qui (relative), 15, *ff.*,  
     164, 258, 276, 278,  
     280, 283-285.  
     Quia, 269.  
     Quidam, 170.  
     Quidem, 328.  
     Quilibet, 170.  
     Quin, 224, *n.*, 235,  
     244, and *nn.* 1, 2.  
     Quippe, 274, and *n.* 2.  
     Quippe qui, 274, and  
     *n.* 1.  
     Quis (interrogative),  
     166 ; (indefinite),  
     168, 249, *n.* 1.

Quisnam, 166, *n.* 2.  
 Quisquam, 171, and *n.*  
 Quisque, 21, *n.* 2 ;  
     171, *nn.*, 176.  
 Quivis, 170.  
 Quo (adv.), 130, and  
     *nn.* ; (conj.), 276,  
     278, and *n.* 1.  
 Quoad, 287, 292, 293.  
 Quod, 234, 269.  
 Quominus, 235, 241,  
     278.  
 Quomodo, 266, 268.  
 Quoniam, 269, 271, *n.*  
 Quoque, 328.  
 Quoties, 287, 289, *n.* 1.

**R**ECORDOR, 37,  
     *n.* 2.  
 Refert, 73-75.  
 Reliquum est, 236.  
 Restat, 236.  
 Revertor and Rever-  
     tor, 59 and *n.* 1.  
 Rogo, 243.  
 Rus, 113, 117, 122,  
     *n.* 3.

**S**ANO, 42, *n.* 1.  
     Sc. 101, *n.* 3.  
     and *Obs.*, 154, 307,  
     and *n.* 1.  
 Secundus, secundum,  
     184, *n.*  
 Secus ac, 267, *n.* 2.  
 Sequitur, 236.  
 Sesterfius, 191.  
 Seu, 256.  
 Si, si non, 248 ; si  
     neque, 256.  
 Sic . . . si, 209, *n.* ;  
     sic . . . ut, 282.  
 Similis, 40, *n.* 2, 267,  
     *n.* 2.  
 Similiter ac, 267, *n.* 2.  
 Simul ac, 287.  
 Sino, 240, 243.  
 Sive, 248, 256.  
 Solco, 63 ; solet, 72.

Statuo, 241.  
 Sub, 151.  
 Subter, 151.  
 Suesco, 63, *n.*  
 Sum, 8, 144 ; com-  
     pounds of, with da-  
     tive, 47.  
 Summus, 9, *n.* 4.  
 Sunt qui, 283, *n.*  
 Super, 151.  
 Suus, 104, *n.* 3, 156,  
     and *nn.* 1, 2, 307,  
     and *n.* 1.

**T**AETET, 37, *n.* 3,  
     69.  
 Talis . . . qualis, 9,  
     *n.* 3, 165.  
 Tam . . . ut, 282.  
 Tametsi, 261.  
 Tanquam, 266, 268.  
 Tantum abest ut, 237.  
 Tantum, tantum ne,  
     294, *nn.*  
 Tenus, 151, 322.  
 Tot . . . quot, 165,  
     and *n.* 1.  
 Totus, 121.  
 Traduco, 35, *n.* 2,  
 Traicio, 35, *n.* 2.  
 Tramitto, 35, *n.* 2.

**U**BI, 202, 276,  
     278, 287, 289.  
 Ullus, 172.  
 Unde, 276, 278.  
 Ums, pl., 181, *nn.*  
     187, *n.* 1, and *Obs.*  
 Usus, 55  
 Ut, 202, 235, 245,  
     264, 266, 268, 276,  
     277, 280, 284, 286,  
     287, 289, 295 ; ut  
     non, 235 ; ut si,  
     266, 267, *n.* 1 ; ut  
     qui, utpote qui,  
     274 ; ut . . . ita,  
     282, *n.*

Uter, uterque, 174,  
175.  
Utinam, 209

**V**APULO, 56, *n*.  
-ve, 300, 328.  
Vel, 300, *n*.

Vel . . . vel, 300.  
Velim, vellem, 210,  
217, *nn*.  
Velut, velut si, 266-  
268.  
Veneo, 56, *n*.  
Vereor, 245, 247.  
Vero, 328.

Versus, 322.  
Verto and Vector,  
59, and *n*. 1.  
Vescor, 54.  
Veto, 107.  
Videor, 14, and *n*.  
1.  
Volo, 108.

New Books and New Editions (from November 1st, 1904, to May 1st, 1905) are underlined.

---

# Select List of Books IN THE University Tutorial Series

PUBLISHED AT



UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD.

(University Correspondence College Press).

W. B. CLIVE, 157 DRURY LANE, LONDON, W.C.

---

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE
MATHEMATICS AND MECHANICS . . . . .	3-5
CHEMISTRY . . . . .	5
PHYSICS . . . . .	6
BIOLOGY . . . . .	7
MODERN HISTORY . . . . .	7
ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE . . . . .	8, 9
PHILOSOPHY . . . . .	10
FRENCH . . . . .	11
LATIN AND GREEK CLASSICS . . . . .	12, 13
LATIN AND GREEK GRAMMARS, ETC. . . . .	14
ROMAN AND GREEK HISTORY . . . . .	15
THE UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENT—DIRECTORIES . . . . .	15
THE ORGANIZED SCIENCE SERIES . . . . .	16

*A List of Books for London University Students, classified for the various Examinations, List of Books for the Cambridge and Oxford Locals and the College of Preceptors Examinations, and also the Complete Catalogue of the University Tutorial Series, may be had post free on application to W. B. CLIVE, The University Tutorial Press Warehouse, 157 Drury Lane, W.C.*

MAY 1905.

## The University Tutorial Series.

---

*General Editor:* WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S.

*Classical Editor:* B. J. HAYES, M.A.

---

The object of the UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES is to provide candidates for examinations and learners generally with text-books which shall convey in the simplest form sound instruction in accordance with the latest results of scholarship and scientific research. Important points are fully and clearly treated, and care has been taken not to introduce details which are likely to perplex the beginner.

The Publisher will be happy to entertain applications from Schoolmasters for specimen copies of any of the books mentioned in this List.

---

### SOME PRESS OPINIONS.

"This series is successful in hitting its mark and supplying much help to students in places where a guiding hand is sorely needed."—*Journal of Education*.

"Many editors of more pretentious books might study the methods of the 'University Tutorial Series' with profit."—*Guardian*.

"The 'University Tutorial Series' is favourably known for its practical and workmanlike methods."—*Public Schools Year Book*.

"The series is eminently successful."—*Spectator*.

"The classical texts in this series are edited by men who are thoroughly masters of their craft."—*Saturday Review*.

"This series of educational works has been brought to a high level of efficiency."—*Educational Times*.

"This useful series of text-books."—*Nature*.

"Any books published in this series are admirably adapted for the needs of the large class of students for whom they are intended."—*Cambridge Review*.

"Clearness in statement and orderliness in arrangement characterise the publications of the University Tutorial Press."—*Oxford Magazine*.

"All books which issue from the 'University Tutorial Press' are both scholarly and practical."—*Westminster Review*.

"This series has won a high reputation for the practical and scientific manuals it provides for students."—*Practical Teacher*.

"Such text-books are immeasurably superior to the heavy tomes, overburdened with extraneous matter, with which boys of a previous generation were familiar."—*School Guardian*.

"The intrinsic merits of the text-books in the University Tutorial Series (University Correspondence College Press) have carried the series far beyond the limits of its tutorial system."—*Schoolmaster*.



## Mathematics and Mechanics.

**Algebra, The New Matriculation.** Adapted to London Matriculation, and containing a Section on Graphs. By R. DEAKIN, M.A., Headmaster of Stourbridge Grammar School. 3s. 6d.

**Algebra, The Tutorial.** ADVANCED COURSE. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 6s. 6d.

"All the theorems usually associated with advanced algebra are here given, with proofs of remarkable force and clearness."—*Schoolmaster*.

**Graphs: The Graphical Representation of Algebraic Functions.** (Contained in *The New Matriculation Algebra*.) By G. H. FRENCH, M.A., and G. OSBORN, M.A., Mathematical Masters of the Leys School, Cambridge. 6d. Limp Cloth, 9d.

**Arithmetic, The Tutorial.** By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc., Headmaster of Kingswood School. (With or without Answers.) 4s. 6d.

"Destined to supersede all other secondary treatises on the subject."—*Westminster Review*.

**Arithmetic, The School.** By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc. (With or without Answers.) 3s. 6d.

"The book is of a very high order of merit."—*School World*.

**Arithmetic, The Junior.** Adapted from the *Tutorial Arithmetic* by R. H. CHOPE, B.A. (With or without Answers.) 2s. 6d.

"Excellent."—*Educational Times*.

**Arithmetic, Clive's Shilling.** Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S. (With Answers, 1s. 3d.)

"The exercises are sufficiently numerous and varied for the ordinary needs of a school."—*School World*.

**Arithmetic, The Primary: In Three Parts.** Each Part 6d.

[*In the press.*]

**Astronomy, Elementary Mathematical.** By C. W. C. BARLOW, M.A., Lond. and Camb., B.Sc. Lond., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. *Second Edition*, with Answers. 6s. 6d.

"A good introduction to Mathematical Astronomy."—*Guardian*.

**Book-keeping, Practical Lessons in.** Adapted to the requirements of the Society of Arts, London Chamber of Commerce, Oxford and Cambridge Locals, etc. By T. C. JACKSON, B.A., LL.B. 3s. 6d.

"Well-adapted for teaching purposes, containing as it does a considerable number of useful examples and decidedly lucid descriptions."—*The Accountant*.

**Book-keeping, Junior (or The Preceptors').** By T. C. JACKSON, B.A., LL.B. 1s. 6d.

**The Right Line and Circle (Coordinate Geometry).** By DR. BRIGGS and DR. BRYAN. *Third Edition*. 3s. 6d.

"It is thoroughly sound throughout, and indeed deals with some difficult points with a clearness and accuracy that has not, we believe, been surpassed."—*Education*.

## Mathematics and Mechanics—continued.

**Coordinate Geometry (The Conic).** By J. H. GRACE, M.A. Camb., and F. ROSENBERG, M.A. Camb., B.Sc. Lond. 3s. 6d.

"The chapters on systems of conics, envelopes, and harmonic section are a valuable addition to scholarship students."—*Guardian*.

**Dynamics, The Tutorial.** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

"In every way most suitable for the use of beginners, the initial difficulties being fully explained and abundantly illustrated."—*Journal of Education*.

**Euclid.** By RUPERT DEAKIN, M.A. Lond. and Oxon., Headmaster of Stourbridge Grammar School. With Problems in Practical Geometry and an Introductory Course of Drawing and Measurement. Books I., II., 1s. Books I.-IV., 2s. 6d. Books V., VI., XI., 1s. 6d.

"The propositions are well set out, and useful notes are added. The figures and letterpress are both well printed."—*Cambridge Review*.

**Geometry, Theoretical and Practical.** By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc., and A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P.

[In preparation.]

**Geometry, A Preparatory Course in.** By the same authors. (With or without Answers.) Cloth, 9d.

**Geometry, Deductions in.** A Collection of Riders and Practical Problems. By T. W. EDMONDSON, B.A., Ph.D. 2s. 6d.

**Hydrostatics, The Matriculation.** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2s.

"An excellent text-book."—*Journal of Education*.

**Mechanics, The Matriculation.** By the same authors. 3s. 6d.

"It is a good book—clear, concise, and accurate."—*Journal of Education*.

"Affords beginners a thorough grounding in dynamics and statics."—*Knowledge*.

**Mensuration and Spherical Geometry:** Specially intended for London Inter. Arts and Science. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and T. W. EDMONDSON, B.A., Ph.D. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"The book comes from the hands of experts; we can think of nothing better qualified to enable the student to master this branch of the syllabus, and to promote a correct style in his mathematical manipulations."—*Schoolmaster*.

**Navigation, Modern.** By WILLIAM HALL, B.A., R.N. 6s. 6d.

"A valuable addition to the text-books on navigation."—*Maritime Review*.

**Statics, The Tutorial.** By Dr. WM. BRIGGS and Dr. G. H. BRYAN. *Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

"This is a welcome addition to our text-books on Statics. The treatment is sound, clear, and interesting."—*Journal of Education*.

**Mathematics and Mechanics—continued.**

**Trigonometry, Junior (or The Preceptors').** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 2s. 6d.  
 "The explanations are clear, and the illustrative examples well selected."—*Guardian*.

**Trigonometry, The Tutorial.** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 3s. 6d.  
 "The book is very thorough."—*Schoolmaster*.

**Chemistry.**

**Analysis of a Simple Salt.** With a Selection of Model Analyses. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., and R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond. 1s. 6d. TABLES OF ANALYSIS (on linen). 6d.  
 "The selection of model analyses is an excellent feature."—*Educational Times*.

**Chemistry, A Safe Course in Experimental.** By W. T. BOONE, B.A., B.Sc. 2s.

This is not a text-book of Chemical Analysis, but a practical course designed to illustrate the fundamental laws and principles of the subject.

"Quite up to the standard of the best of modern elementary books on practical chemistry. The book deserves a good reception."—*Nature*.

**Chemistry, The Tutorial.** By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc. Lond., Ph.D.

Heidelberg, Lecturer in Chemistry in the Victoria University. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S. *Second Edition (Rewritten and Enlarged)*.

Part I. Non-Metals. 3s. 6d.

Part II. Physical Chemistry, Metals, etc. 3s. 6d.

"The descriptions of experiments and diagrams of apparatus are very good, and with their help a beginner ought to be able to do the experimental work quite satisfactorily."—*Cambridge Review*.

**The New Matriculation Chemistry.** By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc. Lond., Ph.D. Heidelberg, Lecturer in Chemistry at Victoria University. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S. *Second Edition (Rewritten and Enlarged)*. 5s. 6d.

"A trustworthy text-book."—*School World*.

**Carbon Compounds, An Introduction to.** By R. H. ADIE, M.A., B.Sc. 2s. 6d.

"The subject-matter of elementary organic chemistry is sketched in both an interesting and profitable manner."—*Guardian*.

**Chemistry, Synopsis of Non-Metallic.** With an Appendix on Calculations. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S. 1s. 6d.  
 "Arranged in a very clear and handy form."—*Journal of Education*.

**Chemical Analysis, Qualitative and Quantitative.** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., and R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 3s. 6d.  
 "The instructions are clear and concise. The pupil who uses this book ought to obtain an intelligible grasp of the principles of analysis."—*Nature*.

## Physics.

**THE TUTORIAL PHYSICS.** By R. WALLACE STEWART, D.Sc. Lond.,  
First in First Class Honours in Physics at B.Sc., and E. CATCH-  
POOL, B.Sc. Lond., qualified for the University Scholarship in  
Physics. In Four Volumes.

**I. Sound, Text-Book of.** By E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc. *4th Edition.* 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Vibratory Motion—Progressive Undulation—Velocity of Sound—Interference—Forced Vibration—Fourier's Theorem—The Ear and Hearing—Reflection of Sound—Stationary Undulation—Vibration in Pipes—Transverse Undulation—Acoustic Measurements.

**II. Heat, Higher Text-Book of.** By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 6s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Thermometry—Expansion of Solids—of Liquids—of Gases—Calorimetry—Liquefaction and Solidification—Vaporisation and Condensation—Hygrometry—Conduction, Convection, Radiation—The First Law of Thermo-Dynamics—Graphic Methods.

**III. Light, Text-Book of.** By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Rectilinear Propagation of Light—Shadows—Photometry—Reflexion at Plane Surfaces—at Spherical Surfaces—Refraction at Plane and Spherical Surfaces—Refraction through Prisms and Lenses—Dispersion—Velocity of Light—Optical Instruments.

**IV. Magnetism and Electricity, Higher Text-Book of.** By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 6s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—ELECTROSTATICS.—Electrification—Induction—Distribution on Conductors—Frictional Machines—Potential and Capacity—The Electric Field—Condensers—Electrometers—Specific Inductive Capacity—Induction Machines—Electric Discharge—Atmospheric Electricity. MAGNETISM.—Fundamental Phenomena and Theory—Simple Measurements—Terrestrial Magnetism—Magnetisation—The Magnetic Field. CURRENT ELECTRICITY.—General Effects of Currents—Ohm's Law—Measurements of Capacity—Chemical Effects of Currents—Heating Effects—Electromagnetic Induction—Measurement of Inductance—Alternating Currents—Electric Waves—Electric Units—Thermo-Electricity—Practical Applications.

**Practical Physics.** By W. R. BOWER, A.R.C.S., and J. SATTERLY, B.Sc., A.R.C.S. *[In the press.]*

**Matriculation Physics: Heat, Light, and Sound.** By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond., and JOHN DON, M.A., B.Sc. Lond. 4s. 6d.

"A student of ordinary ability who works carefully through this book need not fear the examination."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The authors show themselves able to explain in a helpful manner."—*Educational Times.*

**HEAT AND LIGHT, ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK OF.** By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

## Biology.

**Botany, The New Matriculation.** By A. J. EWART, D.Sc. 3s. 6d.

**Botany, Text-Book of.** By J. M. LOWSON, M.A., B.Sc., F.L.S.  
*Third Edition.* 6s. 6d.

"It represents the nearest approach to the ideal botanical text-book that has yet been produced."—*Pharmaceutical Journal*.

"An excellent book."—*Guardian*.

"A workmanlike and well graded introduction to the subject."—*Scotsman*.

**Zoology, Text-Book of.** By H. G. WELLS, B.Sc. Lond., F.Z.S.,  
F.C.P. Enlarged and Revised by A. M. DAVIES, B.Sc. Lond. 6s. 6d.

"The information appears to be well up to date. Students will find this work of the greatest service to them."—*Westminster Review*.

"This book is a distinct success, and should become the standard work for the London Intermediate Examinations. It is carefully written throughout, clear and concise, and yet is extremely interesting reading."—*Glasgow Herald*.

**Biology, Text-Book of.** With Plates and numerous Questions. By  
H. G. WELLS, B.Sc. Lond., F.Z.S., F.C.P., with an Intro-  
duction by G. B. HOWES, F.L.S., F.Z.S. In Two Parts.

Part I., Vertebrates. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Part II., Invertebrates and Plants. 2s. 6d.

"It is well arranged, and contains the matter necessary in a concise and logical order."—*Journal of Education*.

"Mr. Wells' practical experience shows itself on every page; his descriptions are short, lucid and to the point."—*Educational Times*.

## Modern History.

**Matriculation Modern History.** Being the History of England  
1485-1901, with some reference to the Contemporary History of  
Europe and Colonial Developments. By C. S. FEARENSIDE,  
M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

"An excellent manual. The international history, especially in the eighteenth century, where most text-books fail, is very carefully treated."—*School World*.

"A work that gives evidence of scholarship and clever adaptability to a special purpose, and on the production of which much care, forethought, and patient labour have evidently been expended."—*Guardian*.

**The Tutorial History of England (To 1901).** By C. S. FEAREN-  
SIDE, M.A. Oxon. 4s. 6d.

"Provides a good working course for schools."—*Guardian*.

**The Intermediate Text-Book of English History:** a Longer History  
of England. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. Oxon., and A.  
JOHNSON EVANS, M.A. Camb., B.A. Lond. With Maps & Plans.

VOL. I., to 1485. VOL. II., 1485 to 1603. 4s. 6d. VOL. III.,  
1603 to 1714. 4s. 6d. VOL. IV., 1714 to 1837. 4s. 6d.

"It is written in a clear and vigorous style. The facts are admirably marshalled."  
—*Westminster Review*.

## English Language and Literature.

**Matriculation English Course.** By W. H. Low, M.A. Lond., and JOHN BRIGGS, M.A. Camb., F.Z.S. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Historical Sketch—Sounds and Symbols—Outlines of Accidence and Syntax—Common Errors—Analysis—Parsing—The Word, the Sentence, the Paragraph—Punctuation—Rules for Composition—Simple Narrative—Compound Narrative—Descriptive Composition—The Abstract Theme—The Essay—Paraphrasing—Précis-Writing—Letter-Writing and Proof-Reading—Index.

"The matter is clearly arranged, concisely and intelligently put, and marked by accurate scholarship and common sense."—*Guardian*.

"The book will prove distinctly useful."—*School World*.

"The chapters on précis writing and indexing are excellent."—*Westminster Review*.

"Candidates may take this book as a trustworthy guide."—*Schoolmaster*.

"The chapter on précis-writing is unusually good."—*Educational News*.

"We can heartily recommend this book. Particularly good is the chapter on précis-writing."—*Practical Teacher*.

**Précis-Writing, Text-Book of.** By T. C. JACKSON, B.A., LL.B. Lond., and JOHN BRIGGS, M.A. Camb., F.Z.S. 2s. 6d.

[*In the press.*]

**The English Language: Its History and Structure.** By W. H. Low, M.A. Lond. With TEST QUESTIONS. *Sixth Edition, Revised.* 3s. 6d.

"A clear workmanlike history of the English language done on sound principles."—*Saturday Review*.

"The author deals very fully with the source and growth of the language. The work is scholarly and accurate."—*Schoolmaster*.

"It is in the best sense a scientific treatise. There is not a superfluous sentence."—*Educational News*.

**English Literature, The Tutorial History of.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"This is undoubtedly the best school history of literature that has yet come under our notice."—*Guardian*.

"A very competent piece of workmanship."—*Educational News*.

"The scheme of the book is clear, proportional, and scientific."—*Academy*.

"A sound and scholarly work."—*St. James' Gazette*.

**The Intermediate Text-Book of English Literature.** By W. H. Low, M.A. Lond., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 6s. 6d.

"Really judicious in the selection of the details given."—*Saturday Review*.

"This volume seems both well-informed and clearly written. Those who need a handbook of literature will not readily find a more workmanlike example of this size and price."—*Journal of Education*.

"The historical part is concise and clear, but the criticism is even more valuable, and a number of illustrative extracts contribute a most useful feature to the volume. As a compendium for examination purposes this volume ought to take high rank."—*School World*.



## English Classics.

- Bacon's Essays, I.-XX.** By A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon. 1s. 6d.
- Chaucer.—Prologue, Knight's Tale.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond.  
With Glossary. 2s. 6d. Also separately, **The Prologue**, 1s.  
"Quite up to date. The Glossary is excellent."—*Morning Post*.
- Chaucer.—Prologue, Nun's Priest's Tale.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A.  
With Glossary. 2s. 6d.
- Chaucer.—Prologue, Man of Lawes Tale.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A.  
With Glossary. 2s. 6d.
- Chaucer.—Prologue, Squire's Tale.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A. With  
Glossary. 2s. 6d.
- Dryden.—Essay of Dramatic Poesy.** By W. H. LOW, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- Dryden.—Defence of the Essay of Dramatic Poesy.** By ALLEN  
MAWER, B.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d.
- Dryden.—Preface to the Fables.** By ALLEN MAWER, B.A. 1s. 6d.
- Johnson.—A Journey to the Western Islands of Scotland.** By E. J.  
THOMAS, M.A. St. Andrews, B.A. Lond. 2s. 6d.
- Langland.—Piers Plowman. Prologue and Passus I.-VII., Text B.**  
By J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. Lond. 4s. 6d.
- Milton.—Paradise Regained.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.  
"The notes are concise and to the point."—*Cambridge Review*.
- Milton.—Samson Agonistes.** By A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.  
"A capital Introduction. The notes are excellent."—*Educational Times*.
- Milton.—Sonnets.** By W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d.
- Pope.—Rape of the Lock.** By A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon. 1s. 6d.
- Shakespeare.** By Prof. W. J. ROLFE, D.Litt. In 40 volumes.

2s. 6d. per Volume.

Richard II.  
Comedy of Errors  
Merry Wives of Windsor  
Love's Labour's Lost  
Two Gentlemen of Verona  
The Taming of the Shrew  
All's Well that Ends Well  
Measure for Measure  
Henry IV. Part I.  
Henry IV. Part II.

Henry V.  
Henry VI. Part I.  
Henry VI. Part II.  
Henry VI. Part III.  
Richard III.  
Henry VIII.  
Romeo and Juliet  
Macbeth  
Othello  
Hamlet

Cymbeline  
Coriolanus  
Antony and Cleopatra  
Timon of Athens  
Troilus and Cressida  
Pericles  
The Two Noble Kinsmen  
Titus Andronicus  
Venus and Adonis  
Sonnets

2s. per Volume.

Merchant of Venice  
Tempest  
Midsummer Night's  
Dream

As You Like It  
Much Ado About Nothing  
Twelfth Night  
Winter's Tale

King John  
King Lear  
Julius Caesar

**Shakespeare.—Henry VIII.** By W. H. LOW, M.A. Lond. 2s.

**Spenser.—Faerie Queene, Book I.** With INTRODUCTION, NOTES,  
and GLOSSARY, by W. H. HILL, M.A. Lond. 2s. 6d.

## Philosophy.

**Ethics, Manual of.** By J. S. MACKENZIE, Litt.D., M.A., Professor of Logic and Philosophy in the University College of South Wales and Monmouthshire, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, Examiner in the Universities of Cambridge and Aberdeen. *Fourth Edition, enlarged.* 6s. 6d.

"In writing this book Mr. Mackenzie has produced an earnest and striking contribution to the ethical literature of the time."—*Mind*.

"This excellent manual."—*International Journal of Ethics*.

"Written with lucidity and an obvious mastery of the whole bearing of the subject."—*Standard*.

**Logic, A Manual of.** By J. WELTON, M.A. Lond. and Camb., Professor of Education in The Yorkshire College, Victoria University. 2 vols. Vol. I., *Second Edition*, 8s. 6d.; Vol. II., 6s. 6d.

This book embraces all those portions of the subject which are usually read, and renders unnecessary the purchase of the numerous books hitherto used. The relative importance of the sections is denoted by variety of type, and a minimum course of reading is thus indicated.

Vol. I. contains the whole of Deductive Logic, except Fallacies, which are treated, with Inductive Fallacies, in Vol. II.

"A clear and compendious summary of the views of various thinkers on important and doubtful points."—*Journal of Education*.

"Unusually complete and reliable. The arrangement of divisions and subdivisions is excellent."—*Schoolmaster*.

"The manual may be safely recommended."—*Educational Times*.

**Psychology, A Manual of.** By G. F. STOUT, M.A., LL.D., Fellow of the British Academy, Professor of Logic and Metaphysics in the University of St. Andrews, late Examiner in Mental and Moral Science in the University of London. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 8s. 6d.

"It is unnecessary to speak of this work except in terms of praise. There is a refreshing absence of sketchiness about the book, and a clear desire manifested to help the student in the subject."—*Saturday Review*.

"The book is a model of lucid argument, copious in its facts, and will be invaluable to students of what is, although one of the youngest, perhaps the most interesting of the sciences."—*Critic*.

"The student's task will be much lightened by the lucidity of the style and the numerous illustrative facts, which together make the book highly interesting."—*Literary World*.

**Psychology, The Groundwork of.** By G. F. STOUT, M.A., LL.D. 4s. 6d.

"All students of philosophy, both beginners and those who would describe themselves as 'advanced,' will do well to 'read, mark, learn, and inwardly digest' this book."—*Oxford Magazine*.

"This work can be recommended to the student as a good introduction to a somewhat modern subject."—*Westminster Review*.



## French.

**Junior (or The Preceptors') French Course.** By E. WEEKLEY, M.A.  
Lond. and Camb., Professor of French at University College,  
Nottingham. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"The execution is distinctly an advance on similar courses."—*Journal of Education.*

**The Matriculation French Course.** By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"The rules are well expressed, the exercises appropriate, and the matter accurate and well arranged."—*Guardian.*

**The Tutorial French Accidence.** By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A.  
With EXERCISES, Passages for Translation into French, and a  
Chapter on Elementary Syntax. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"We can heartily recommend it."—*Schoolmaster.*

**The Tutorial French Syntax.** By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A., and  
A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. With Exercises. 3s. 6d.

"Mr. Weekley has produced a clear, full, and careful Grammar in the 'Tutorial French Accidence,' and the companion volume of 'Syntax,' by himself and Mr. Wyatt, is worthy of it."—*Saturday Review.*

**The Tutorial French Grammar.** Containing the *Accidence* and the  
*Syntax* in One Volume. *Second Edition.* 4s. 6d. Also the  
**Exercises on the *Accidence*, 1s. 6d. ; on the *Syntax*, 1s.**

**French Prose Composition.** By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"The arrangement is lucid, the rules clearly expressed, the suggestions really helpful, and the examples carefully chosen."—*Educational Times.*

**Class Work in French Composition.** By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. 2s.

**Junior (or The Preceptors') French Reader.** By E. WEEKLEY, M.A.  
Lond. and Camb. With Notes and Vocabulary. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

"A very useful first reader with good vocabulary and sensible notes."—*Schoolmaster.*

**French Prose Reader.** Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., Examiner  
to the College of Preceptors, and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond.  
and Camb. With Notes and Vocabulary. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"Admirably chosen extracts. They are so selected as to be thoroughly interesting and at the same time thoroughly illustrative of all that is best in French literature."—*School Government Chronicle.*

**The Matriculation French Reader.** Containing Prose, Verse, Notes,  
and Vocabulary. By J. A. PERRET, Officier de l'Instruction  
publique. 2s. 6d.

"We can recommend this book without reserve."—*School World.*

**Advanced French Reader.** Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., and  
W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"Chosen from a large range of good modern authors, the book provides excellent practice in 'Unseens.'"—*Schoolmaster.*

**Higher French Reader.** Edited by ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"The passages are well chosen, interesting in themselves, and representative of the best contemporary stylists."—*Journal of Education.*

## Latin and Greek Classics.

The editions of LATIN and GREEK CLASSICS contained in the UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES are on the following plan:—

A short INTRODUCTION gives an account of the Author and his chief works, the circumstances under which he wrote, and his style, dialect, and metre, where these call for notice.

The TEXT is based on the latest and best editions, and is clearly printed in large type.

The distinctive feature of the NOTES is the omission of parallel passages and controversial discussions of difficulties, and stress is laid on all the important points of grammar and subject-matter. Information as to persons and places mentioned is grouped together in a HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX; by this means the expense of procuring a Classical Dictionary is rendered unnecessary.

The standard of proficiency which the learner is assumed to possess varies in this series according as the classic dealt with is usually read by beginners or by those who have already made considerable progress. A complete list is given overleaf.

VOCABULARIES, arranged in order of the text and interleaved with writing paper, are issued, together with Test Papers, in the case of the classics more commonly read by beginners: the price is 1s. or (in some instances) 1s. 6d. A detailed list can be had on application.

**Caesar.**—*Gallic War, Book I.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d.

"A clearly printed text, a good introduction, an excellent set of notes, and a historical and geographical index, make up a very good edition at a very small price."—*Schoolmaster.*

**Cicero.**—*De Amicitia and De Senectute.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d. each.

"The notes, although full, are simple."—*Educational Times.*

**Horace.**—*Odes, Books I.—III.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d. each.

"Notes which leave no difficulty unexplained."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The Notes (on Book III.) are full and good, and nothing more can well be demanded of them."—*Journal of Education.*

**Livy.**—*Book I.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"The notes are concise, dwelling much on grammatical points and dealing with questions of history and archaeology in a simple but interesting fashion."—*Education.*

**Vergil.**—*Aeneid, Books I.—XII.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. assisted by F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A., and others. 1s. 6d. each.

**Xenophon.**—*Anabasis, Book I.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and F. L. D. RICHARDSON, B.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

"The notes are all that could be desired."—*Schoolmaster.*

## Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

(INTRODUCTION, TEXT, AND NOTES.)

- AESCHYLUS** — Eumenides, 3/6 ; Persae, 3/6 ; Prometheus, 2/6 ; Septem contra Thebas, 3/6.
- ARISTOPHANES**—Ranae, 3/6.
- CAESAR**—Civil War, Bk. 1, 1/6 ; Gallic War, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, (each) 1/6 ; Gallic War, Bk. 1, Ch. 1-29, 1/6 ; Gallic War, Bk. 7, Ch. 1-68, 1/6 ; Invasion of Britain (IV. 20-V. 23), 1/6.
- CICERO**—Ad Atticum, Bk. 4, 3/6 ; De Amicitia, 1/6 ; De Finibus, Bk. 1, 2/6 ; De Finibus, Bk. 2, 3/6 ; De Officiis, Bk. 3, 3/6 ; Philippic II., 3/6 ; Pro Cluentio, 3/6 ; Pro Lege Manilia, 2/6 ; Pro Milone, 3/6 ; Pro Plancio, 3/6 ; De Senectute, In Catilinam I., Pro Archia, Pro Balbo, Pro Marcello, (each Book) 1/6.
- DEMOSTHENES**—Androtion, 4/6.
- EURIPIDES**—Alcestis, 2/6 ; Andromache, 3/6 ; Bacchae, 3/6 ; Hecuba, 3/6 ; Hippolytus, 3/6 ; Iphigenia in T., 3/6 ; Medea, 3/6.
- HERODOTUS**—Bk. 3, 4/6 ; Bk. 4, Ch. 1-144, 4/6 ; Bk. 6, 2/6 ; Bk. 8, 3/6.
- HOMER**—Iliad, Bk. 24, 3/6 ; Odyssey, Bks. 9, 10, 2/6 ; Odyssey, Bks. 11, 12, 2/6 ; Odyssey, Bks. 13, 14, 2/6 ; Odyssey, Bk. 17, 1/6.
- HORACE**—Epistles, 4/6 ; Epodes, 1/6 ; Odes, 3/6 ; Odes, (each Book) 1/6 ; Satires, 4/6.
- ISOCRATES**—De Bigis, 2/6.
- JUVENAL**—Satires, 1, 3, 4, 3/6 ; Satires, 8, 10, 13, 2/6 ; Satires, 11, 13, 14, 3/6.
- LIVY**—Bks. 1, 5, 21, 22, (each) 2/6 ; Bks. 3, 6, 9, (each) 3/6 ; Bk. 21, Ch. 1-30, 1/6.
- LUCIAN**—Charon and Piscator, 3/6 ; Charon, 1/6.
- LYSIAS**—Eratosthenes and Agoratus, 3/6.
- NEPOS**—Hannibal, Cato, Atticus, 1/0.
- OVID**—Fasti, Bks. 3, 4, 2/6 ; Bks. 5, 6, 3/6 ; Heroides, 1, 5, 12, 1/6 ; Metamorphoses, Bk. 1, 1-150, 1/6 ; Bk. 3, 1-130, 1/6 ; Bks. 11, 13, 14, (each) 1/6 ; Tristia, Bks. 1, 3, (each) 1/6.
- PLATO**—Crito, 2/6 ; Apology, Ion, Laches, Phaedo, (each) 3/6 ; Euthyphro and Menexenus, 4/6.
- SALLUST**—Catiline, 1/6.
- SOPHOCLES**—Ajax, 3/6 ; Antigone, 2/6 ; Electra, 3/6.
- TACITUS**—Agricola, 2/6 ; Annals, Bk. 1, 3/6 ; Bk. 2, 2/6 ; Histories, Bk. 1, 3/6 ; Bk. 3, 3/6.
- TERENCE**—Adelphi, 2/6.
- THUCYDIDES**—Bk. 7, 3/6.
- VERGIL**—Aeneid, Books 1-12, (each) 1/6 ; Eclogues, 3/6 ; Georgics, Bks. 1, 2, 3/6 ; 1, 4, 3/6.
- XENOPHON**—Anabasis, Bk. 1, 1/6 ; Bk. 4, 1/6 ; Cyropaedia, Bk. 1, 1/6 ; Hellenica, Bk. 3, 1/6 ; Bk. 4, 1/6 ; Memorabilia, Bk. 1, 3/6 ; Oeconomicus, 4/6.

*A detailed catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.*

# Greek and Latin.

## GRAMMARS AND READERS.

**Advanced Greek Unseens.** *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

**The Tutorial Greek Reader.** With VOCABULARIES. By A. WAUGH YOUNG, M.A. Lond. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.

**Junior (or The Preceptors') Latin Course.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.  
 "A good practical guide. The principles are sound, and the rules are clearly stated."—*Educational Times*.

**The Tutorial Latin Grammar.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 3s. 6d.

"It is accurate and full without being overloaded with detail. Tested in respect of any of the crucial points, it comes well out of the ordeal."—*Schoolmaster*.

**The Tutorial Latin Grammar, Exercises and Test Questions on.** By F. L. D. RICHARDSON, B.A. Lond., and A. E. W. HAZEL, LL.D., M.A., B.C.L. 1s. 6d.

"This will be found very useful by students preparing for University examinations."—*Westminster Review*.

**Latin Composition.** With copious EXERCISES. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Fifth Edition, revised.* 2s. 6d.

"Simplicity of statement and arrangement: apt examples illustrating each rule; exceptions to these adroitly stated just at the proper place and time, are among some of the striking characteristics of this excellent book."—*Schoolmaster*.

**Junior (or The Preceptors') Latin Reader.** By E. J. G. FORSE, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d.

"A well graded and carefully thought-out series of Latin selections. The vocabulary is worthy of very high praise."—*Educational News*.

**Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors.** With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. Edited by A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s. 6d.

Provides practice in reading Latin in preparation for Examinations for which no classics are prescribed.

"It is quite an interesting selection, and well done."—*School World*.

"The selection is a good one, and the notes are brief and to the purpose."—*Journal of Education*.

"Well conceived and well carried out."—*Guardian*.

**The Tutorial Latin Reader.** With VOCABULARY. 2s. 6d.

"A soundly practical work."—*Guardian*.

**Advanced Latin Unseens.** Being a Higher Latin Reader. Edited by H. J. MAIDMENT, M.A., and T. R. MILLS, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"Contains some good passages, which have been selected from a wider field than that previously explored by similar manuals."—*Cambridge Review*.

**The Tutorial Latin Dictionary.** By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A. Lond. and Camb., late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. 6s. 6d.

"A good specimen of elementary dictionary-making."—*Educational Times*.

"A sound school dictionary."—*Speaker*.

## Roman and Greek History.

**The Tutorial History of Rome.** (To 14 A.D.) By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. With Maps. 3s. 6d.

"It is well and clearly written."—*Saturday Review*.

"A distinctly good book, full, clear, and accurate. The narrative is throughout lucid and intelligible; there are no wasted words, and no obscurities, and the authors have taken obvious pains to bring their facts up to date."—*Guardian*.

**The Tutorial History of Greece.** (To 323 B.C.) By Prof. W. J. WOODHOUSE, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

"Prof. Woodhouse is exceptionally well qualified to write a history of Greece, and he has done it well."—*School World*.

**A Longer History of Rome.** By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and others (each volume contains an account of the Literature of the Period)—

390—202 B.C. 3s. 6d.

78—31 B.C. 3s. 6d.

202—133 B.C. 3s. 6d.

44 B.C.—138 A.D. 3s. 6d.

133—78 B.C. 3s. 6d.

"Written in a clear and direct style. Its authors show a thorough acquaintance with their authorities, and have also used the works of modern historians to good effect."—*Journal of Education*.

**A Longer History of Greece.** By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. (each volume contains an account of the Literature of the Period)—

To 495 B.C. 3s. 6d.

404—362 B.C. 3s. 6d.

495—431 B.C. 3s. 6d.

362—323 B.C. 3s. 6d.

440—404 B.C. 3s. 6d.

Sicily, 491—289 B.C. 3s. 6d.

"For those who require a knowledge of the period (to 495 B.C.) no better book could be recommended."—*Educational Times*.

## The University Correspondent

AND

UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE MAGAZINE

Issued on the 1st and 15th of each month. Price 1d., by Post 1½d.;

Half-yearly Subscription, 1s. 6d.; Yearly Subscription, 2s. 6d.

## Examination Directories.

**Matriculation Directory, with Full Answers to the Examination Papers.** Published during the fortnight following each Examination. Nos. VI., VII., IX., XI.—XIX., XXI., XXIII., XXIX., XXXI., XXXII., XXXIII., XXXV., XXXVII., XXXVIII., 1s. each, net. No. XXXIX. (January 1905), 1s. net. Issues not mentioned above are out of print.

# The Organized Science Series:

## FOR THE SCIENCE AND ART EXAMINATIONS OF THE BOARD OF EDUCATION.

GENERAL EDITOR—WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S.,  
Honorary Associate of Science of the Yorkshire College, Victoria University.

### FOR THE FIRST STAGE.

- I. First Stage Practical Plane and Solid Geometry. *Second Edition.* 2s.
- III. First Stage Building Construction. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.
- V. First Stage Mathematics (Euclid and Algebra). 2s.
- VI.A. First Stage Mechanics of Solids. *Fourth Edition.* 2s.
- VI.B. First Stage Mechanics of Fluids. *Second Edition.* 2s.
- VIII. First Stage Sound, Light, and Heat. 2s.
- IX. First Stage Magnetism and Electricity. *Revised Edition.* 2s.
- X. First Stage Inorganic Chemistry (Theoretical). 2s.
- XVII. First Stage Botany. *Second Edition.* 2s.
- XXII. First Stage Steam. 2s.
- XXIII. First Stage Physiography. 2s.
- XXV. First Stage Hygiene. *Third Edition.* 2s.
- XXVI. Elementary Science of Common Life (Chemistry). 2s.
- XI. First Stage Organic Chemistry, Theoretical. [*In preparation.*]
- X.P. First Stage Inorganic Chemistry (Practical). *Second Ed.* 1s.
- XI.P. Practical Organic Chemistry. 1s. 6d.

### FOR THE SECOND STAGE.

- V. Second Stage Mathematics (the additional Algebra and Euclid, with the Trigonometry required). *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- VI.A. Second Stage Mechanics (Solids), or Advanced. *Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* Part I. DYNAMICS. Part II. STATICS. 3s. 6d. each Volume.
- VIII.C. Second Stage Heat, or Advanced. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- IX. Second Stage Magnetism and Electricity. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.
- X. Second Stage Inorganic Chemistry (Theoretical), or Advanced. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- XVII. Second Stage Botany. 3s. 6d.
- XX. and XXI.B. Modern Navigation. (*For the First and Second Stages.*) 6s. 6d.
- XXV. Second Stage Hygiene, or Advanced. 3s. 6d.
- X.P. Second Stage Inorganic Chemistry (Practical), or Advanced. 2s.
- XI.P. Practical Organic Chemistry. 1s. 6d.

LONDON: W. B. CLIVE, 157 DRURY LANE, W.C.





